**INTENSIVE BASIC LATIN**

*Intensive Basic Latin: A Grammar and Workbook* comprises a dynamic reference grammar and related exercises in a single volume. The book presents forty individual grammar points, covering the core material which students would expect to encounter in their first year of learning Latin. Grammar points are followed by contextualized examples and exercises which allow students to reinforce and consolidate their learning.

There is a particular emphasis throughout on familiarizing students with real, unadulterated Latin and the task of teasing information from the Latin via translations. To this end, there are matching exercises with unedited Latin excerpts and rough English translations in the chapters, encouraging students to take a hands-on approach in their learning. In addition to this, a short reading relating to the adventures of Hercules is presented at the end of almost every chapter; these readings, which become progressively more complex, give the course a strong sense of narrative cohesion and interest and provide students with opportunities to develop their comprehension and translation skills.

Key features include:

- Clear, accessible format and jargon-free explanations of grammar
- Many useful language examples
- Abundant and varied exercises with full answer key
- Controlled usage of vocabulary throughout, allowing students to concentrate on building up their grammatical knowledge
- Review sections at intervals throughout the text, providing exercises specially designed to consolidate knowledge of language points covered

Written by an experienced instructor, *Intensive Basic Latin: A Grammar and Workbook* is an ideal resource for beginning students of Latin. It can be used as a textbook, grammar reference and practice resource and is suitable both for class use and independent study.

**Jean-François R. Mondon** is Assistant Professor of Foreign Languages at Minot State University, USA.
Other titles available in the Grammar Workbooks series are:

Basic Arabic

Basic Cantonese
Intermediate Cantonese

Basic Chinese
Intermediate Chinese

Basic German
Intermediate German

Basic Irish
Intermediate Irish

Basic Italian

Basic Japanese
Intermediate Japanese

Basic Korean
Intermediate Korean

Basic Persian

Basic Polish
Intermediate Polish

Basic Portuguese

Basic Russian
Intermediate Russian

Basic Spanish
Intermediate Spanish

Basic Welsh
Intermediate Welsh

Basic Yiddish
For mémé and pépé.
This page intentionally left blank
CONTENTS

Introduction ix
Latin sources xii

1 Pronunciation and stress 1
2 Present tense: conjugations I, II, IV 6
3 Present tense: conjugation III 12
4 1st declension 16
   Review of units 1–4 22
5 2nd declension 23
6 1st and 2nd declension adjectives 29
7 Prepositions 35
8 Uses of the ablative I 40
9 Imperfect tense 45
10 Future tense 50
   Review of units 5–10 56
11 Irregular verbs I: esse and posse 58
12 Uses of the genitive 63
13 Perfect active 69
14 Pluperfect and future perfect active 75
15 3rd declension 79
16 3rd declension i-stems 86
17 3rd declension adjectives 91
   Review of units 11–17 97
18 Uses of the dative 99
19 Passive voice 103
20 Passive of the perfect system 111
21 Demonstratives I 117
22 Demonstratives II 124
   Review of units 18–22 130
23 Irregular verbs II
24 Pronominal adjectives
25 Relative clauses
26 Direct questions
27 Personal pronouns
28 Imperative mood

Review of units 23–28

29 Vocative and locative
30 Uses of the accusative
31 Indefinite pronouns
32 Indefinite adjectives
33 Participles
34 Ablative absolute

Review of units 29–34

35 Verbs that take the dative
36 4th and 5th declensions
37 Comparatives
38 Superlatives
39 Adverbs
40 Uses of the ablative II

Review of units 35–40

Key to exercises
Dictionaries
Latin–English
English–Latin
INTRODUCTION

This book is intended as a synopsis of every major grammatical point usually taught in a first semester college Latin course. Since the central focus of this book is grammatical structure, the vocabulary used throughout the Latin-to-English and English-to-Latin exercises is kept constant and repeated often, allowing the reader to focus solely on the grammar and not on acquiring new words every unit, as most conventional books do. The pool of words which are used in the fabricated sentences throughout the book is largely confined to those words that are used in the exercises of units in which grammar unique to specific lexical items is introduced; namely, Units 2 (1st, 2nd, 4th conjugations), 3 (3rd conjugation), 4 (1st declension), 5 (2nd declension), 6 (1st–2nd declension adjectives), 15 (3rd declension), 16 (3rd declension i-stems), 17 (3rd declension adjectives), and 36 (4th and 5th declensions). Aside from the focus on grammar, this book also aims to acquaint students with the task of dealing with real, unadulterated Latin and teasing information from the Latin via a translation. To this end, starting in Unit 2 and running until the end of the book, each unit contains a matching exercise with unedited Latin excerpts and rough English translations. Additionally, in order to give more cohesion to the book and to give students the sense of completion not to mention some enjoyment, the story of Hercules is presented from Units 5 through 39. Naturally, the Latin used in each snippet becomes progressively more complex. Unit 40 ends with the opening lines of Caesar’s Gallic Wars, syntactically parsed along the lines of my Caesar’s Dē Bellō Gallicō: A SyntacticallyParsed Reader which is also available from Routledge. These reading excerpts may be shorter than some instructors would like but it is believed at this stage of language acquisition that the student must focus on truly acquiring the forms, something which is oftentimes lost when the task becomes translating large passages with unknown vocabulary. I have therefore opted for quality over quantity. In order to get longer passages, however, an instructor could hold off on reading the various Hercules excerpts until the relevant units have been covered. So for instance, rather than read the first part of Hercules’ battle with the Amazons in Unit 27, the class could hold off and read it along with the second and concluding part of the story after Unit 28.
Seven review sections are littered throughout the book, roughly divided along thematic lines. The order of grammar topics is gradient and builds upon earlier units, though someone wishing to use this book for review could certainly skip around as the units are largely self-contained. I think most instructors will find nothing crazy about the ordering of units though it may strike some as odd to present adverbs near the end of the book. I concede that this is unusual but since the grammar of adverbs is rather simple and nothing is lost by not introducing them earlier, I have decided to hold them off until comparatives and superlatives have been introduced, so that all aspects of adverbs can be presented in one fell swoop. An answer key is provided at the end of the book, though translations of the reading excerpts and answers for the seven review sections are absent. Latin to English and English to Latin dictionaries close out the book.

As stated above this book is intended as a first semester college Latin course (it could certainly be used in high schools too). The 40 units can be covered in a single semester for those courses which meet four or five hours a week. For those courses which meet three hours a week, working through the first 28 units is reasonable. The second volume of this series, *Intensive Intermediate Latin*, has as its focus the subjunctive, subordinate clauses, and longer reading passages. The two volumes together form a complete collegiate Latin sequence, preparing students for higher level Latin prose or poetry courses. A book such as this is not written in a bubble but bears the imprint of many people I would be remiss if I did not formally thank here. To begin with this book would probably have never seen the light of the day had I not been forced to take two years of Latin back in high school. I’d like to thank Larry Iezzi, my first Latin teacher, whose enthusiasm for this amazing language was palpable and contagious. George Beóthy, whether he knew it or not, helped kindle my growing interest in languages through our many conversations about all things linguistics-related. Additionally, along with Fr. Richard Wyzykiewicz, Sch.P, he helped get me permission to base the Hercules excerpts used here on *Roma Aeterna: A Second-Year Latin Book* by the late polyglot Fr. Ladislau Magyar, Sch.P. Aside from my professors in college from whom I learned the beauty of giving short 7-minute quizzes to my own students (Aislinn Melchior), the reality of spoken Latin (Shane Butler), and its rich and intricate history (Don Ringe, George Cardona), I absolutely owe a great debt of gratitude to my bosses, past and present, Jeffrey Lyons and Linda Olson. The former took a chance on a recent college graduate and entrusted him with three classes of Latin at Notre Dame High School in East Stroudsburg, PA. Besides having had the good fortune to acquire tidbits of pedagogical advice from fantastic senior colleagues, it was there that I first had the opportunity to begin to put Latin grammatical notes together. I cannot thank enough my students from those three memorable classes (Latin I, II, and AP Latin (where we happily read more Catullus than Vergil)) who not only taught me how not to teach but reminded me that this profession is pretty awesome. Linda Olson invited me with open arms out to Minot State University where she not only has given me free rein to start a
Latin concentration but has been unimaginably encouraging of all of my endeavors and whose exceptionally positive comportment is truly admirable. It is here at Minot State that my grammatical notes became the full-fledged units which comprise this book. This work has benefited tremendously from my students here who dealt with my random asides into Classical Armenian, Celtic linguistics, and the Amish and were always happy to point out typos. In particular I would like to express my gratitude to Megan Alley, Kortney Arnold, Kaylee Dockter, Deb Kinzell, David Lavergne, Ashley McGonigle, Steven Merkel, Misty Neumiller, and Matthew Volk. This book has benefited greatly from three anonymous reviewers. While I could not incorporate all of their feedback, those comments which have been included have made this book that much better. I would like to thank Mary Dalton who had the unenviable task of reading through an early manuscript and making sense of erratic sentences. Additionally, I express my gratitude to proofreader Claire Trocmé who worked through all the exercises and who not only caught many oversights but provided a much needed user perspective to the work. Finally, Andrea Hartill and Isabelle Cheng at Routledge have made this task so unimaginably easy. I thank them for always being positive and immediately responsive to my questions and in particular thank Andrea for allowing this book to become a reality.

Maximās grātiās vōbīs omnibus agō!
The abbreviations follow those used by the Perseus Digital Library (www.perseus.tufts.edu).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Work 1</th>
<th>Work 2</th>
<th>Work 3</th>
<th>Work 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apuleius</td>
<td><em>Met.</em></td>
<td><em>Metamorphoses</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Dé Finibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Civ.</em></td>
<td><em>The Civil War</em></td>
<td><em>Fin.</em></td>
<td><em>Bonôrum et Malôrum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar</td>
<td><em>Gal.</em></td>
<td><em>The Gallic War</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>For Flaccus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catullus</td>
<td><em>Carmina</em></td>
<td>Cicero <em>Flac.</em></td>
<td><em>For Marcus</em></td>
<td><em>Fonteius</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>ad Brut.</em></td>
<td><em>Letters to and from Brutus</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>On the Responses of the Haruspices</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Agr.</em></td>
<td><em>On the Agrarian Law</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Har.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Amic.</em></td>
<td><em>On Friendship</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Marc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Att.</em></td>
<td><em>Letters to Atticus</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Mil.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Brut.</em></td>
<td><em>Brutus</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Mur.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Caec.</em></td>
<td><em>For Aulus Caecina</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Off.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Cael.</em></td>
<td><em>For Marcus Caelius</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Orat.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Catil.</em></td>
<td><em>Against Catiline</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Para.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Clu.</em></td>
<td><em>For Aulus Cluentius</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Phil.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>de Orat.</em></td>
<td><em>Dê Örâtōre</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Pis.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Deiot.</em></td>
<td><em>For King Deiotarius</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Planc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>Fam.</em></td>
<td><em>Epistulae ad Familiārēs</em></td>
<td>Cicero</td>
<td><em>S. Rosc.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For Sextus Roscius of Ameria
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin sources</th>
<th>English translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cicero Sen. Dē Senectūte Pliny the Elder The Natural History</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero Top. Topica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero Tusc. Tusculānae Against Vatinius Quintilian Inst. Institutūō Ērātōria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero Vat. Disputātiōnēs Against Verres Sallust Cat. The Catilinarian Conspiracy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero Ver. Attic Nights Sallust Jug. The Jugurthine War</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gellius Against Apion Seneca Ben. Dē Beneficīōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horace Ars The Art of Poetry Seneca Cl. Dē Clēmentia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horace Od. Carmina Seneca Ep. Moral Letters to Lucilius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horace S. Satyrīrām Librī Sallust The History of Rome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Josephus Ap. Against Apion Seneca Her. O. Herculēs Oetaeus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Livy The History of Rome)
| Lucretius On the Nature of Things Seneca Phaed. Phaedra |
| Martial Epiāgrams Servius Honoratus Commentary on the Georgics of Vergil |
| Nepos Them. Themistocles
| Ovid Am. Art of Love
| Ovid Ep. Epistles
| Ovid Met. Metamorphoses
| Ovid Tr. Tristia Statius Silv. Silvae |
| Petronius Satyricon St Jerome Vulgate Bible |
| Phaedrus Aesop’s Fables Suetonius Aug. Dīvīs Augustus |
| Plautus Am. Amphitruo Suetonius Cal. Caligula
| Plautus As. Asinaria Suetonius Dom. Domitiānus |
| Plautus Capt. Captīvī Suetonius Gal. Galba |
| Plautus Cas. Casina Suetonius Jul. Dīvīs Iūlius |
| Plautus Cist. Cistellāria Suetonius Nero Nerō |
| Plautus Cur. Curculio Suetonius Tib. Tiberius |
| Plautus Epid. Epidicus Suetonius Ves. Vespāsiānus |
| Plautus Men. Menaechmī Suetonius Vit. Vitellius |
| Plautus Mer. Mercātor Tacitus Ann. Annālēs |
| Plautus Mil. Miles Glōrīōsus Tacitus Hist. Historiae |
| Plautus Mos. Mostellāria Terence Ad. Adelphī |
| Plautus Per. Persa Terence Eu. Eunuchus
| Plautus Poen. Poenulus Terence Ph. Phormiō |
| Plautus Ps. Pseudolus Valerius Flaccus Argonautica |
| Plautus Rud. Rudēns Vergil Aeneid Aeneid |
| Plautus St. Stichus Vergil Eccl. Eclogues |
| Plautus Trin. Trinummmus Vergil G. Georgicōn |
| Plautus Truc. Truculentus Vitruvius On Architecture |
This page intentionally left blank
UNIT 1
Pronunciation and stress

I. Pronunciation

Background
Knowing how a word is pronounced in Latin is much easier than in English since the spelling system is so regular. One letter equals one sound. Nothing like English read exists in Latin, where the same word can be pronounced two different ways each with different meanings: You read it now. vs. You read it yesterday.

There are two ways to pronounce Latin:

• classical pronunciation
  ▪ The way the language actually sounded in the first century BCE

• Church pronunciation
  ▪ This is very similar to Italian, differing from classical pronunciation in a few key spots. It reflects the pronunciation of Latin after the Roman Empire (c. 500 CE) and is the standard used today by the Vatican.

In what follows classical pronunciation is presented alongside a transcription into the international phonetic alphabet for those readers who may be familiar with it. Unique developments of church pronunciation are indicated after each section.
Vowels

The pronunciation of the models reflects a northeastern American accent.

Latin | International Phonetic Alphabet
---|---
a | [ə]  
ā | [a]  
e | [ɛ]  
ē | [e]  
i | [ɪ]  
ī | [i]  
o | [ɔ]  
ō | [o]  
u | [ʊ]  
ū | [u]

Diphthongs

The movement of the tongue in the pronunciation of a single vowel is a diphthong. Some diphthongs in English occur in *I, my, die, how, mount, tone, show, doe, bay, mate, boy, toil.*

The principal diphthongs of Latin are:

ae | y in *my* [ai]  
au | ow in *how* [au]

oe | oy in *boy* [ɔi]  
uo | wea in *weak* [wi]

Church pronunciation

ae | a in *save* [e]  
OE | a in *save* [e]
### Consonants

Those consonants for which nothing follows are pronounced as in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>International Phonetic Alphabet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>[b]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>always as a hard c, like the c in <em>cook</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>[d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>[f]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>always as a hard g, like the g in <em>gate</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>[h]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>like the y in <em>yes</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>[l]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>[m]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>[n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>[p]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qu</td>
<td>[kw]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>trilled as in Spanish <em>rojo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>[s]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>[t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>like w in <em>wet</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>like x in <em>ax</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that *i* may be used to write both a vowel and a consonant. As a rule of thumb, *i* is a consonant when it occurs first in a root:

- this corresponds to the start of a word:
  - *iubeō* *I command* has 3 syllables: *iu-be-ō*
- this also corresponds to a root which follows a prefix such as *con-*
  - *coniūrātiō* *conspiracy* has 5 syllables: *con-iū-rā-ti-ō*

As you learn more Latin, you will get a feel for the recurring prefixes of the language.

### Church pronunciation

- *c* is like the *ch* in *church* when
  - it is followed by: *e, ē, i, ĩ, ae, oe* [tʃ]
- *g* is like the *j* in *judge* when
  - it is followed by: *e, ē, i, ĩ, ae, oe* [dʒ]
Pronunciation and stress

\( v \) is like English \( v \) \([v]\)

\( ti \) before a vowel is pronounced like \( ts \) in \( cats \) \([ts]\)

II. Stress

Fundamentals

One syllable in every word bears the stress in Latin. This is similar to English. However, the two languages differ in whether the location of the stressed syllable in a word is predictable or not.

- In English, which syllable bears the stress is unpredictable. Speakers of English simply need to memorize that the word fundamental bears stress on the third syllable, American on the second, record [the thing placed on a turntable] on the first, and record [the act of copying something to a CD or DVD] on the second.

- In Latin, on the other hand, which syllable carries the stress is perfectly predictable according to a simple algorithm.

Algorithm for determining stress

Stress in Latin may only occur on one of the last three syllables of the word, which are called:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ultima</th>
<th>the final syllable</th>
<th>[from Latin \textit{ultima final}]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>penult</td>
<td>the second to last syllable</td>
<td>[from paene ultima almost final]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antepenult</td>
<td>the third to last syllable</td>
<td>[from ante paene ultima]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stress is placed on the \textit{ultima} if the word only has one syllable.

- Remember that \textit{qu} counts as a single consonant and not as a consonant + vowel.
  - \textit{quis} who has only one syllable

Stress is placed on the \textit{penult} if one of the following three conditions holds:

1. the word only has two syllables
2. the penult has a long vowel (\( ã, ë, ĩ, ō, ũ \)) or a diphthong (\( ae, au, oe, ui \))
3 the vowel of the penult is followed by two consonants or x
   • x counts as two consonants since it is pronounced as *ks*
   • qu counts as a single consonant

Stress is placed on the antepenult when:
   • the penult does not fit any of the above 3 conditions

**Exercise 1**

Each of the following words is stressed on the ultima or penult. In the case of
the latter, indicate which of the three conditions it satisfies. It may satisfy more
than one.

1 nauta *sailor* 8 imperātōre *by the emperor*
2 poēta *poet* 9 rēx *king*
3 nātūra *nature* 9 libertās *freedom*
4 via *road* 10 mīles *soldier*
5 vīta *life* 12 senātus *senate*
6 pugna *fight* 13 quibus *to whom*
7 adulēscēntis *of a young man* 14 quisque *each one*

**Exercise 2**

Determine whether the ultima, penult, or antepenult bears the stress in the
following words and why.

1 haec *this* 11 equitātum *of the cavalries*
2 tempestātēm *storm* 12 quem *whom*
3 ambulāvīsem *I would have walked* 13 aliquid *someone*
4 hiemis *of winter* 14 speciēs *appearance*
5 negōtium *task* 15 passūs *of the pace*
6 īnsidiae *ambush* 16 vallēs *valley*
7 īnsidiārum *of an ambush* 17 removeō *I remove*
8 proelium *battle* 18 rīdeo *I laugh*
9 amantium *of the loving ones* 19 Rōmānus *Roman*
10 pāx *peace* 20 interficiō *I kill*
UNIT 2
Present tense: conjugations I, II, IV

Background

The present tense conveys an action which is in the process of occurring. English has three ways of expressing this:

- He walks.
- He is walking.
- He does walk.

The first two verbal forms differ with respect to aspect.

- *Walks* indicates that the action is habitual or commonplace, but does not imply that the action is necessarily taking place right now. It is termed **simple aspect**.
- *Is walking* emphasizes that the action is still currently in progress, hence it is termed **progressive aspect**.
- *Does walk* is used to respond affirmatively to a statement or question negating the sentence, for instance *He doesn’t walk or He doesn’t walk, does he?*

English hardly possesses any traces of personal endings in the present tense. In the 1st person (*I, we*), 2nd person (*you*), and 3rd person plural (*they*) forms, no ending is added: *I walk, we walk, you walk, they walk.* Only in the 3rd person singular (*he, she, it*) is an ending added: *s/he walks.*

Verbs in English are also grouped into classes termed **conjugations**, though the large majority fall into the **regular conjugation** (historically called **weak verbs**).

In listing the forms of a verb in English, one states the **verbal root**, the **past tense**, and the **past participle**. These are the three forms of a verb (termed the **principal parts**) needed to form every tense and aspect of the verb. For instance:

- The **verbal root** is used to form the present tense (*I walk, he walks*) and the present participle (*walking*).
- The **past tense** is used to form the simple past tense (*I walked, he walked*).
The past participle is used to form the perfect tenses (I have walked, I had walked) and the passive voice (The dog was walked, the dog has been walked).

Regular conjugation/Weak verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td>walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>looked</td>
<td>looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wave</td>
<td>waved</td>
<td>waved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A minority of verbs are irregular and belong to other conjugations which are formed in English usually by changing the vowel of the root. These verbs are historically called strong verbs. While accounting for only a small percentage of English verbs, these irregular verbs are highly frequent.

Irregular/Strong verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Latin structure

Latin only possesses one present tense form. The three different types of English present are all translated by the same Latin form.

Latin has four conjugations, with very meagre traces of a 5th which is termed the 3rd-īō conjugation. As opposed to English all four of the Latin conjugations have many members.

A Latin verb possesses four principal parts, each of which must be memorized when learning a new verb, since they will each be used to form specific tenses and moods. For instance:

1st conjugation: amō amāre amāvī amātus to love

2nd conjugation: videō vidēre vīdī vīsus to see

3rd conjugation: dūcō dūcere dūxī ductus to lead

3rd -īō conjugation: capiō capere cēpī captus to seize

4th conjugation: sentiō sentīre sēnśī sēnsus to feel
The four conjugations are differentiated by their *infinitives* which is the 2nd principal part (*amāre, vidēre, dūcere, capere, sentīre*).

- The *infinitive* in English is the ‘to-form’ of the verb and is the dictionary form. All Latin verbs in this book will be glossed by their English infinitives.
- The principal parts of 1st conjugation verbs are predictable, always taking the endings -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus. Because of this 1st conjugation verbs are simply followed by (1) in dictionaries rather than having all their forms written out.

The 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations all share the feature of having an infinitive with a long vowel followed by the ending -re. This vowel before the -re which marks the conjugation class of a verb is called a *thematic vowel*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>-ā-re</td>
<td>amāre ‘to love’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>-ē-re</td>
<td>vidēre ‘to see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>-ī-re</td>
<td>sentīre ‘to feel’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These three conjugations form the present tense identically:

- Go to the infinitive and chop off the -re:
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \text{amāre} & \rightarrow \text{amā-} \\
  \text{vidēre} & \rightarrow \text{vidē-} \\
  \text{sentīre} & \rightarrow \text{sentī-}
  \end{align*}
  
- Add the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-ōmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ōtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ōnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Perform the following 4 alterations to the vowel before the ending:
  - Drop -ā- before the ending -ō in 1st conjugation verbs
    - amō and not *amāō
  - Shorten a long vowel before another vowel
    - videō and sentiō and not *vidēō or *sentīō
  - Shorten a long vowel before a word final -t and -nt
    - amat and amant rather than *amāt or *amānt.
  - Add a -u- before the -nt- in 4th conjugation verbs.
    - sentiunt and not *sentint
• The second and third alterations are general rules of Latin which are true throughout the language.

The result is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg.</td>
<td>amō I love</td>
<td>videō I see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>amās you love</td>
<td>vidēs you see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amat s/he loves</td>
<td>videt s/he sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>amāmus we love</td>
<td>vidēmus we see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>amātis you love</td>
<td>vidētis you see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amant they love</td>
<td>vident they see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note The 1st principal part of the verb is the 1st sg. of the present tense; that is, it is the I form of the verb.

Advanced topics

• Despite having an infinitive in -are rather than expected -āre, the verb dō, dare, dedī, datus to give is conjugated like any other 1st conjugation verb (dō, dās, dat, dāmus, dātis, dant). The same goes for stare to stand.
• The present can be used to express a past action in order to make the action more lively:

  cohortīs paulātīm incēdere iubet he ordered (literally: orders) the cohorts to advance gradually

(Sallust Cat. 60.1)
Exercise 1

Indicate the conjugation of the following, then translate.

1 properāmus 18 aperīs 35 pugnat
2 veniunt 19 patet 36 dēbet
3 aedificō 20 ārdēmus 37 nūntīas
4 stant 21 fulgētis 38 respondeō
5 manēs 22 dormit 39 rogātis
6 habitat 23 excitant 40 monent
7 movētis 24 parō 41 stat
8 portātis 25 mūnītis 42 imperāmus
9 habent 26 servāmus 43 negō
10 teneō 27 dant 44 vocat
11 tacet 28 videō 45 audīunt
12 sentīt 29 sciunt 46 nescīs
13 cōgitō 30 putās 47 docēmus
14 amāmus 31 ōrdēmus 48 iubētis
15 optat 32 studet 49 cavent
16 valent 33 terrēs 50 flētis
17 timent 34 nocētis

Exercise 2

Change the numbers of the words in Exercise 1, keeping the person constant. That is, if a word is singular then make it plural. If a word is plural then make it singular.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1 we desire 11 he warns 21 she does find
2 they are sleeping 12 we do know 22 I am afraid
3 you (sg.) laugh 13 you (pl.) ask 23 they hear
4 it is burning 14 I deny 24 we are hastening
5 we do carry 15 they teach 25 she is standing
6 we are coming 16 he is eager 26 he announces
7 it does harm 17 you (sg.) love 27 you (pl.) open
8 it is open 18 we are fighting 28 they weep
9 I frighten 19 it is shining 29 he does command
10 they are strong 20 I think 30 we do not know
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 1st, 2nd, or 4th conjugation verb. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 asylum aperit (Livy)
2 Eō praesente coniūrātiōnem aperit (Sallust Cat.)
3 quae frontēs aperīt hominum (Cicero Planc.)
4 et haec tibi portō dōna prius (Vergil Aeneid)
5 nam omnia mēcum portō mea (Cicero Parad.)
6 quī iussa per aurās verba patris portō (Ovid Met.)
7 “rīdēs” inquiēs “in talibus rēbus?” (Cicero Att.)
8 rīdēs? nōn sunt haec rīdicula (Cicero Att.)
9 “Quid rīdēs” inquit “vervēx?” (Petronius)
10 et nūdō corpore pugnāre (Caesar Gal.)
11 ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt (Caesar Gal.)
12 nunc quoniam pugnāre contrā mē īnstitī (Cicero Ver.)

(a) You laugh? These things are not funny
(b) he opens a sanctuary
(c) and to fight with a naked body
(d) indeed I carry all my things with me
(e) and they began to fight more bravely
(f) you will say “you laugh on such matters?”
(g) He says, “why do you laugh, you wether?”
(h) which uncovers the appearances of men
(i) since now you have resolved to fight against me
(j) in his presence he uncovers the conspiracy
(k) and before I carry these gifts to you
(m) I, who carry the commands – the words – of my father through air
UNIT 3
Present tense: conjugation III

Background

The third conjugation is unique for two reasons:

• Its *thematic vowel* is short: *ducere*
• It is divided into two sub-conjugations which differ with respect to the presence or absence of -i- in certain forms:
  - 3rd regular conjugation
  - 3rd *iō* conjugation
• The following two verbs will be used to illustrate the two sub-conjugations in this unit:

| 3rd-regular | dūcō | dūcere | dūxī | ductus | to lead |
| 3rd *iō*    | capiō | capere | cēpī | captus | to seize |

Latin structure

To form the present tense:

• Drop the -ō from the first principal part:
  
dūcō → duc-
capiō → capi-
- To these, add the endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 -ō</td>
<td>-(i)mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 -(i)s</td>
<td>-(i)tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 -(i)t</td>
<td>-unt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The -(i)- is added in 3rd-regular verbs since these are the verbs whose stem does not end in the vowel -i- already:

  1sg.  dukō I lead  capiō I seize
  2 dukis you lead  capis you seize
  3 dukit s/he leads  capit s/he seizes

  1pl. dukimus we lead  capimus we seize
  2 dukitis you lead  capitis you seize
  3 dukunt they lead  capiunt they seize

**Notes**

- The two sub-conjugations are identical except for the extra -i- in the 1st sg. and 3rd pl. in 3rd-iō verbs.
- 3rd-iō verbs differ from the 4th conjugation (cf. Unit 2) in that the -i- is always short in the former but long -ī- in the latter.

  **capis, capimus, capitis** vs. **sentīs, sentīmus, sentītis**

<p>| Synopsis of present tense thematic vowels + endings |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>3rd-iō</th>
<th>4th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg.</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-ēō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-iō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-at</td>
<td>-ēt</td>
<td>-it</td>
<td>-it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>-āmus</td>
<td>-ēmus</td>
<td>-imus</td>
<td>-imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ātis</td>
<td>-ētis</td>
<td>-itis</td>
<td>-itis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ant</td>
<td>-ent</td>
<td>-unt</td>
<td>-iunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 1

Indicate whether each of the following is a regular 3rd conjugation verb or a 3rd-īō (use the dictionary to help you). Then translate.

1. petis 16. currō 31. crēdunt
2. fugit 17. caditis 32. dēscendō
3. tangimus 18. geris 33. trahit
4. dūcitis 19. mittunt 34. discēdis
5. pellō 20. agit 35. cōgunt
6. iaciunt 21. pōnō 36. iungitis
7. bibit 22. capimus 37. incipiunt
8. emis 23. relinquis 38. vertō
9. clauditis 24. vīvunt 39. crēscimus
10. premimus 25. rēgit 40. dīvidit
11. tegō 26. faciō 41. interficiō
12. frangit 27. dīcō 42. quaeritis
13. canunt 28. cernitis 43. intellegitis
14. nōscis 29. crēdis 44. discunt
15. legitis 30. scribimus 45. cupiunt

Exercise 2

Change the numbers of all of the words in Exercise 1, keeping the person constant. That is, if a word is singular then make it plural. If a word is plural, then make it singular.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1. you (sg.) divide 8. he desires 15. it begins
2. I say 9. we buy 16. she rules
3. you (pl.) send 10. they break 17. it closes
4. we ask 11. he kills 18. we do
5. they place 12. we write 19. I sing
6. she drinks 13. you (pl.) believe 20. they grow
7. he reads 14. they depart 21. you (sg.) lead
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains either a 3rd or 3rd-iō conjugation verb. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 vērum esse īnscītī crēdimus (Plautus *Truc.*)
2 parvum hoc tandem esse crēdimus (Livy)
3 deum esse nōn tamquam iussī crēdimus (Seneca *Cl.*)
4 impleitur fossae et cava flūmina crēscunt (Vergil *G.*)
5 nam concordiā parvae rēs crēscunt (Sallust *Jug.*)
6 omnia quandō paulātīm crēscunt (Lucretius)
7 sed scīre cupiō quid habeat (Cicero *Cael.*)
8 cupiō audīre, ut videam (Cicero *Phil.*)
9 audīre cupiō, quī in pāce et ōtiō (Cicero *Caec.*)
10 iacit volturiōs quattuor (Plautus *Cur.*)
11 ante ēs ipsum portūs ancorās iacit (Livy)
12 lustrāmina pontō pōne iacit (Valerius Flaccus)

(a) but I wish to know what it has
(b) the ditches fill and hollow rivers grow
(c) small states indeed grow by harmony
(d) we, ignorant, believe it to be true
(e) he throws the four vultures
(f) he throws the anchors before the mouth itself of the harbor
(g) not just, as if ordered, do we believe him to be a god
(h) I wish to hear, that I may see
(i) since all things grow little by little
(j) we just believe this to be small
(k) he throws the purifying offerings behind to the sea
(l) I wish to hear, who in peace and leisure

Exercise 5

Using the sentences in Exercise 4, try to determine the meanings of the following words.

vērum  deum  pāce
ante  ancorās  quattuor
UNIT 4

1st declension

Fundamentals

How do we know who’s doing the loving in the sentence John loves the girl next door or who’s being bitten in the sentence The dog bit the mailman? Simple enough, the word order tells us. In English, the subject almost always precedes the verb. Equally consistently, the object follows the verb. Not all languages work this way, however. Languages such as Russian and Latin do not rely on word order to indicate the subject or object. Rather, they rely on special endings placed on the end of a word, called inflectional endings. Therefore, in the Latin sentence Puer puellam amat the boy loves the girl we know that puellam is the person being loved (amat) by the boy (puer) not because it occurs in a specific position in the sentence, but because it ends in -am.

Why do languages have inflectional endings? Well, it grants the language much freer word order which can be utilized in different contexts (something which is largely done by intonation in English or by adverbs). For instance, our Latin sentence could also be written among other possibilities – as:

Puellam puer amat. [stressing the girl] The boy loves THE GIRL.

Amat puellam puer. [stressing the act of loving] The boy LOVES the girl.

Latin cases

Inflectional endings added to nouns or pronouns are called case endings. There are five cases in Latin (and two minor cases, the locative and the vocative, discussed in Unit 29):

1 nominative – used when the noun is the subject

‘The son of the man bought with money a ring for the woman.’
2 **genitive** – used when the noun *possesses* something, usually translated by *of* + the noun or noun + *’s*

‘The son *of the man* bought with money a ring for the woman.’
‘The man’s son bought with money a ring for the woman.’

3 **dative** – used to express the *indirect object* translated by *to*/*for* + the noun

‘The son of the man bought with money a ring *for the woman.*’

4 **accusative** – used to express the *direct object* of the verb

‘The son of the man bought with money *a ring* for the woman.’

5 **ablative** – used to express the *means* by which some action is done

‘The son of the man bought *with money* a ring for the woman.’

or to highlight the means aspect of the ablative, one may translate:

‘The son of the man bought a ring for the woman *by means of money.*’

As an aid to learning the cases, only the single most frequent use of each case is listed above. As will be seen in later units every case aside from the nominative possesses other functions.

As can be seen by the example sentence, what will be expressed in Latin via inflectional endings is expressed in English by prepositions, for example:

*of the man* *for the woman* *with the money*

In Latin each of the above is expressed by a SINGLE word, whose ending indicates what the word is doing in the sentence (note that Latin has no word for *the* or *a*):

- *virī* of the man
- *fēminae* to the woman
- *pecūniā* with money

-ī indicates the genitive
-ae indicates the dative
-ā indicates the ablative

The translation of the English sentence into Latin is given below with the case endings underlined:

*Fīlius virī fēminae pecūniā ānulum ēmit.*
Latin declensions

Every noun in Latin belongs to one and only one of five declensions, for example: pecūnia (money) is 1st declension while equus (horse) is 2nd declension. Why a word is one declension as opposed to another is just a historical artifact which must be memorized, much like the plural of English goose is geese and not *gooses.

Declensions differ by what endings are used to express the cases. The dictionary forms of a noun are the nominative singular and the genitive singular. When the stem of the genitive is the same as the stem of the nominative, only the genitive ending is listed and not the whole genitive form itself:

pecūnia, -ae money vs. grex, gregis herd

1st declension

In order to decline any 1st declension noun, simply remove the final -ae from the genitive singular and add the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As an example: pecūniae → pecūni-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>pecūnia</td>
<td>pecūniae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>pecūniae</td>
<td>pecūniārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>pecūniae</td>
<td>pecūniīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>pecūniām</td>
<td>pecūniās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>pecūniā</td>
<td>pecūniīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Note that some forms are identical. Context will allow you to determine how such an ambiguous word is being used in a given sentence.
- Some words only occur in the plural. In lieu of listing the nominative and genitive singular forms of such words in the glossary, the nominative and genitive plurals are listed:

tenebrae, -ārum darkness
• Most 1st declension nouns are feminine. The exceptions are a handful of words most of which refer to a profession, such as **nauta** *sailor*, **agricola** *farmer*, **poëta** *poet*, **incola** *inhabitant*

**Advanced topics**

The words **dea**, -ae *goddess* and **filia**, -ae *daughter* usually take the special ending -ābus in place of -īs in the dative and ablative plural.

This is to avoid ambiguity with the words **deus**, -ī *god* and **fīlius**, -ī *son* (see Unit 5).

**Exercise 1**

Convert each form to the opposite number, then translate. Some words may have more than one possibility.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>laetitia</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>amīcītīā</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>deās</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>cōpiārum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>noxae</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>lacrimārum</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>vītā</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>fēminīs</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>agricolam</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>īnsidiīs</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>turbae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 2**

Determine the case of the underlined words in each sentence. Then translate the underlined words into Latin. Note that English *in* and *on* are translated by Latin ablatives.

1. The woman saw the eagle.
2. The women told the story to the girls.
3. A queen of an island has servants.
4. The sailor hit an eagle with an arrow.
5. The mob was filled with joy.
6. The farmers of the province entered the land of darkness.
7. The mob heard the story of the daughter of the queen.
8. The goddess gave a crown of victory to the inhabitant of the country.
9. The riverbank borders the road.
10. By means of the language the poet wrote a story.
11. The farmers and their daughters entered battle.
12. Do not do harm to the island.
13. By means of luck the daughter of the goddess found the forest.
14. The goddess destroyed the island by means of waves.
15. The farmer saw the shadow of the gate.
16. The anger of the goddess did not leave her memory.
17. It is your punishment to bring water to the nymphs.
Because of the stars and moon he found the loot in the country house. 
He lost his soul on the flames of the altar. 
She told the story of injustice by means of a letter.

Exercise 3

Translate the following. Note the following words which occur in some of the sentences:

- the prepositions:
  - ad [+ accusative] to
  - in [+ accusative] into, onto
  - in [+ ablative] in, on
  - dē [+ ablative] about, concerning

- the conjunction sed but
- the conjunction -que and is added to the second word of a pair
- the question word quandō when?

1. Fēmina corōnam rēgīnae in vīllam portat.
2. Incolae ōnsulārum laetitiā canant.
3. Filiae nautae poētāeqē nōn in tenebrīs manent sed in silvam currunt.
4. Umbrā lūnae praedam nōn inveniō.
5. Aquila in aquā cēnam videt.
6. Fāmae incolārum dē deā crēdimus.
7. Quandō ad ōnsulam venītis?
8. Sagittae nymphārum in rīpam cadunt.
10. Incolae ōram deae timent.

Exercise 4

Change the number of all of the nouns in Exercise 3 (unless the noun only has plural forms), keeping case the same. If a noun is singular, make it plural and vice versa. Do not forget that any changes in the number of the subject will affect the form of the verb too!

Exercise 5

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 1st declension noun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1. ēripis lacrimās nōn cōnsōlandō sed minandō (Cicero *Pis.*)
2. lacrimās gaudium, questūs adūlātiōnem miscēbant (Tacitus *Ann.*)
3. inter vectōrum lacrimās et mortis mētum (Phaedrus)
4. vīdī contermina rīpae cum gregibus stabula alta trahī (Ovid *Met.*)
5. tendēbantque manūs rīpae ulteriōris amōre (Vergil *Aeneid*)
6. continentemque rīpae collem imprōvīsō occupat (Caesar *Civ.*)
7. multitūdine sagittārum atque omnis generis tēlōrum (Caesar *Gal.*)
8. armōrum nūllō, sagittārum vel praccipuō
   studiō tenēbātur (Suetonius *Dom.*)
9. sīc illae mētū sagittārum (Apuleius *Met.*)
10. tū liquidī dūcēbās fontis ad undam (Ovid *Met.*)
11. quī deae vestīgiō discurrēns in lenem vibrātur undam (Apuleius *Met.*)
12. ũte, ratēs, frangite virginis undam (Valerius Flaccus)

(a) you snatch away tears not by consoling but by threatening
(b) by a great number of arrows and of weapons of every type
(c) go, ships, crush the wave of a maiden
(d) I saw high stables near the riverbank being dragged away together with the herds
(e) he was held by no enthusiasm of arms, rather by a particular zeal of arrows
(f) which running by the footstep of the goddess sparkles in a gentle wave
(g) he occupies unexpectedly a hill adjacent to the riverbank
(h) they stretched out their hands because of a yearning for the farther shore
(i) in this way, they, out of fear of arrows
(j) you were leading to the water of the clear spring
(k) between the tears of the passengers and the fear of death
(l) joy was mixing with tears, laments were mixing with flattery

Exercise 6

Return to Exercise 4 in Unit 2, and try to locate the lone 1st declension form. It is an:

   accusative plural

Now do the same for Exercise 4 in Unit 3. The grammatical descriptions of the three 1st declension forms are listed in the order in which they occur:

- a nominative plural
- an ablative singular
- an accusative plural
Review of units 1–4

A. Indicate where the stress falls on each of the following words and why.

1 intextum  6 dēlēcta  11 amor
2 ūnfandum  7 rēditū  12 refūgit
3 lacrimīs  8 nōtissima  13 comitante
4 procul  9 spectēta  14 obtulerat
5 vīribus  10 ecce  15 ūnsonuēre

B. Use the following verbs to translate.

amō, amāre to love
doceō, docēre to teach
veniō, venīre to come

1 amāmus  5 they come
2 amant  6 I teach
3 docēs  7 she loves
4 venit  8 you (pl.) teach

C. Use the following verbs to translate.

capiō, capere to seize
dūcō, dūcere to lead

1 capis  4 they lead
2 dūcitēs  5 you (sg.) seize
3 dūcunt  6 we seize

D. Determine the case and number of each of the following nouns. Some may have multiple possibilities.

1 fēminārum  4 deābus
2 turbam  5 aquilās
3 lūnae  6 portā
Background

As opposed to 1\textsuperscript{st} declension nouns (Unit 4) which are primarily feminine, 2\textsuperscript{nd} declension nouns are either \textit{masculine} or \textit{neuter}.

The endings are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine endings</th>
<th>Neuter endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textit{Notes}

Neuter nouns take the same endings as those of the masculine except in three contexts:

- nominative singular: \textit{-um}
- nominative plural: \textit{-a}
- accusative plural: \textit{-a}

Fortunately, the nominative plural and accusative plural of a neuter noun are always identical. This is true regardless of which declension the neuter noun belongs to.

The same is true of the nominative singular and accusative singular of neuter nouns.
Some masculine nouns do not end in -us in the nominative singular, but rather in -r or -er. These nouns simply add the other endings to the nominative form in -r, in some cases losing the -e- which precedes the -r (see puer and ager below).

This is one of the reasons why the genitive singular is always glossed with a word in a dictionary. Besides indicating which declension the noun belongs to, the genitive provides the stem to which the endings outside of the nominative singular are added. In this instance, the genitive singular shows whether or not the -e- which occurs before the -r in the nominative singular exists in the other forms of the noun.

Examples

equus, -ī horse  vir, -ī man
puer, -ī boy  ager, agrī field
frūmentum, -ī grain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. Nom.</td>
<td>equus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>equī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>equō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>equum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>equō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. Nom.</td>
<td>equī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>equōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>equīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>equōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>equīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- The 2nd declension has an -ō- in many instances where the 1st declension has an -ā-:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st decl.</th>
<th>2nd decl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ablative singular</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive plural</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative plural</td>
<td>-ās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- For 2nd decl. masculine nouns, the genitive singular is the same as the nominative plural. The same situation holds in the 1st declension:

1st declension: genitive sg. = nominative pl. -ae
2nd declension masculine: genitive sg. = nominative pl. -ī
• Two endings are identical with the endings of the 1st declension:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st decl.</th>
<th>2nd decl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dative plural</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative plural</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The ending -a plays a different role in the 1st and 2nd declensions:

- 1st declension: -a = nominative singular
- 2nd declension neuter: -a = nominative and accusative plural

• In order to know the function of -a, one must know what declension the word belongs to.
  - If the word belongs to the 1st declension then the -a can only be a nominative singular.
  - If it belongs to the 2nd declension then the -a can be either the nominative plural or the accusative plural but not the nominative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>Dictionary entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fēmina woman</td>
<td>1st declension</td>
<td>(fēmina, -ae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frūmenta grains</td>
<td>2nd declension</td>
<td>(frūmentum, -ī)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 1

Convert each form to the opposite number, then translate. Some words may have more than one possibility.

1 deī 5 templum 9 somnō
2 somnia 6 mundīs 10 caelōrum
3 aurō 7 ventī 11 pontus
4 vēlī 8 campus 12 antrīs

Exercise 2

Translate the following. Note the following words which occur in some of the sentences:

- the prepositions:
  - ad [+ accusative] to
  - circum [+ accusative] around
  - contrā [+ accusative] against
  - dē [+ ablative] about, concerning
• ē [+ ablative] away from
• in [+ ablative] in, on
• in [+ accusative] into, onto

- the conjunction -que and is added onto the second word of a pair

1 Saxa contrā mūrōs ferrī iaciunt.
2 Rāmī in viīs manent.
3 Fīlius nautae fābulam dē hortō deōrum deārumque nūntiat.
4 Semper equīs cibum nauta portat.
5 Hodiē bibimus vīnum!
6 Taurī in agrum agricolae movent et ibi stant.
7 Taurum equumque lupus silvae interficit.
8 Vulgīs rēgīna cibum dat et virī cibum fīliīs fīliābusque dīvidunt.
9 Populus īnsulae in antrīs vīvit et ibi dormit.
10 Puerī sociōrum īnsulae verba deae audīunt et nōn timent.
11 Servus ē vīllā domīni fugit et ad terram fīnitīmorum properat.
12 Quandō incolae īnsulae barbarōs vident, fēminaē virīque arma et gladiōs ferrī capiunt.
13 Oculī et coma dēī fulgent, bracchia dēī valent, et animus dēī ārdet.
14 In memoriā odium barbarōrum tenet.
15 Rēgīna negōtia vulgō dat.
16 Servīs mūrōs circūm castra populus aedificat.
17 Barbarus contrā incolōs oppidō bellum gerit.
18 Perīculō belfī auxiliōm deōrum vulgus petit.
19 Auxiliō populus puerō praemium dat.
20 Rēgīnae in locō numerus liberōrum canit.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latin.

1 The neighbours close the gates of the wall.
2 The children are weeping because of their hatred of barbarians.
3 The wind is strong and deep sea carries the sailors to the island.
4 The son of the goddess finds an eagle in the sky and kills a bull with a sword.
5 The queen commands the crowd to run to the caves.
6 We believe the words of the nymph.
7 Sleep seizes the mind when a man drinks.
8 The people depart by means of a sail and the help of the queen.
9 The poet writes stories for children of the town.
10 Around the field the inhabitants build a wall of iron and gold.
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 2\textsuperscript{nd} declension noun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. intrā oppida ac mūrōs compelluntur (Caesar \textit{Gal.})
2. vōbīs mūrōs atque urbis tēctae commendat (Cicero \textit{Catil.})
3. hostīs habet mūrōs (Vergil \textit{Aeneid})
4. nēquīquam vānīs iactantem cornuā ventīs (Catullus)
5. tū, nisī ventīs dēbēs lūdibrium, cavē (Horace \textit{Od.})
6. disiēcitque ratēs ēvertitque aequora ventīs (Vergil \textit{Aeneid})
7. nōn sine candidā puellā et vinō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs (Catullus)
8. audīs in cibō et vinō (Cicero \textit{Pis.})
9. nunc vinō pellite cūrās (Horace \textit{Od.})
10. quī propter gravem morbum oculōrum tum nōn navigārit (Cicero \textit{Ver.})
11. quamvīs sopor est oculōrum parte receptus (Ovid \textit{Met.})
12. poena omnis oculōrum ad caecitātem mentis est conversa (Cicero \textit{Dom.})

(a) flinging in vain its horns to the empty winds
(b) the enemy has the walls
(c) they are driven together within the towns and walls
(d) who then did not sail on account of a serious illness of the eyes
(e) although slumber was seized by some (of the) eyes
(f) not without a radiant girl and wine and humour and all laughs
(g) she scattered the ships and overturned the seas by means of the winds
(h) you listen (to them) in food and in wine
(i) beware you, lest you ought to be a laughing stock by means of the winds
(j) all the punishment of his eyes changed to blindness of his mind
(k) now drive away your cares by means of wine
(l) he entrusts to you the walls and houses of the city
Exercise 5

Return to Exercise 4 in Unit 2, and try to locate the following 2nd declension forms, which are listed in the sequence in which they occur:

- an accusative singular neuter
- an accusative plural neuter
- two accusative plural neuters in the same sentence

Now do the same for Exercise 4 in Unit 3, and try to locate the following 2nd declension forms:

- an accusative singular masculine
- an ablative singular neuter
- an accusative plural masculine
- dative singular

Now do the same for Exercise 5 in Unit 4, and try to locate the following 2nd declension forms:

- two ablative singular neuters in the same sentence (both forms are gerunds; see Intensive Intermediate Latin)
- an accusative singular neuter
- an accusative plural neuter
- genitive plural neuter
- a genitive plural neuter and an ablative singular neuter in the same sentence

Reading: Hercules and the Serpents I


est s/he is  fortis strong  ōdit s/he hates  vult s/he wants

serpentēs serpents [acc. pl.]  mediā nocte in the middle of the night
UNIT 6
1st and 2nd declension adjectives

Background

Adjectives describe a noun.
When the adjective immediately precedes the noun it is describing, the adjective is being used attributively.

- the black car
- the blue, cloudless sky
- the singing birds
- a happy-go-lucky person

When the adjective is separated from the noun it is describing by a verb, the adjective is being used predicatively.
The verbs which have the ability to separate an adjective from its noun are be, seem, smell, sound and other verbs of sensation.

- The dog is hungry.
- The song sounds fantastic.
- The weather seems terrible.
- The pie smells divine.

Latin structure

Unlike some languages such as German, Latin exhibits no difference between attributive and predicative adjectives. They take the same form in both constructions.

Since adjectives work so closely with nouns it should be unsurprising that they decline like nouns, taking specific endings for case and number.

Additionally, however, since adjectives lack an inherent gender of their own, they acquire the gender of the noun they are modifying. They therefore select their case, number, and gender from the noun they modify.

For example, if a noun is accusative singular feminine, then the adjective – whether attributive or predicative – will likewise need to be accusative singular feminine.
Adjectives belong either to the 1st/2nd-declension (Units 4 and 5) or to the 3rd declension (Unit 15). The former simply take 1st declension endings when a feminine form is needed, and 2nd declension endings when a masculine or neuter form is needed.

Example

**bonus, -a, -um** good

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is important to realize that the endings on the adjective and on the noun it modifies will not always agree. This will become apparent as other declensions are learned, but for the time being observe the following examples:

- **agricola bonus** the good farmer (nom. sg.)
- **incolae bonō** to the good farmer (dat. sg.)

- Since *agricola* is masculine, 2nd declension endings are used on the adjective.
- The fact that *agricola* is 1st declension makes no difference whatsoever in the form of the adjective.
  - Adjectives agree for person, number, and gender, but not for declension!

As was the case with some 2nd declension nouns, the masculine nominative singular of some adjectives ends in -r:

**līber, lībera, līberum** free

Some of these adjectives that end in -er drop their -e- when endings are added:

**noster, nostra, nostrum** our
Latin word order

Attributive adjectives predominantly follow the noun they modify.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vir bonus</td>
<td>a good man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēmina pulchra</td>
<td>a beautiful woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canis laetus</td>
<td>a glad dog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When placed before the noun, the adjective expresses a crucial, stressed aspect of meaning. The difference is not often clear in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fugitūvus servus</td>
<td>a runaway slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servus fugitūvus</td>
<td>a slave who’s a runaway</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives modifying a noun in a prepositional phrase (Unit 7) very often occur outside of the prepositional phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cum taurō</td>
<td>with a bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferō cum taurō</td>
<td>with a wild bull</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When unaccompanied by a noun, an adjective can serve as a noun, termed a substantive adjective. Based on the gender of the adjective, an appropriate English noun (man, woman, people, thing, things, one) may be inserted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magna videō.</td>
<td>I see great (things).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūcundus venit.</td>
<td>The joyful (man) is coming.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced topics

In some set phrases the position of the adjective does not change the emphasis but the actual meaning:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēs bonae</td>
<td>good things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonae rēs</td>
<td>articles of value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēnsa secunda</td>
<td>a second table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secunda mēnsa</td>
<td>dessert</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When two nouns of different genders are being modified by a single predicative adjective, there is variation in what gender the adjective assumes.

General tendencies are:

- When both nouns refer to humans, the adjective is masculine

Rēgīna et nauta sunt bonī.
The queen and sailor are good.
• When both nouns refer to things, the adjective is sometimes neuter, even if neither noun is neuter, yet other times it agrees with the closer noun:

Librī et epistulæ poëtae sunt bona.
Librī et epistulæ poëtae sunt bonae.
The books and letters of the poet are good.

Exercise 1

Write the form of magnus, -a, -um which agrees with each of the following. Be aware that some will have more than one answer.

1 verba  5 nautae  9 poëtārum
2 agrō  6 praemiī  10 patriā
3 lūnam  7 ager  11 oppidō
4 corōnīs  8 aquilās  12 incolam

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 In pontō invenimus vēla alta.
2 Amīcī mūros lātōs altōsque populō oppidī aeditīcant.
3 Cūr ad parvam villam venīs?
4 Bracchiīs longīs vir aquilās vulgō capit.
5 Multī barbāri in insulam currunt et contrā incolās prosperōs pugnant.
6 Puer sōlus in āram deae pulchræ rānum longum pōnīt.
7 Terram firmam nautae dēfessī petunt.
8 Ventō lentō caeli coma nigra fīliae rēgīnae nōn movet.
9 Dē taurō albō et nympha candidā scribit poēta.
10 Stēllae in antrō obscurō nōn fulgent.
11 Populus hortum publicum crēscit.
12 Magister dē antiquō populō docet.
13 Fīnitimī equōs novōs firmōsque emunt.
14 Oppidum magnum in agrum bonum patet.
15 Inimīcus rēginam interficīt malō vīnō.
16 Ínsidiōs puellās liberās capiēt et barbarīs vēndit.
17 Poētam ignōtum caecumque epistulārum multārum puerī puellaeque nōn sciunt.
18 Rēgīnae clārae equōs nigros, aurum, et ferrum candidum mittit.
19 Domīnō dignō laetitīa populō iūcundus in locō sacrō et pūrō canīt.
20 Ventōs ferōs, pontum asperum, undās altās, et tenebrās nigrās dea saeva nautīs miserīs facit.
Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1. The good queen rules with joy the people of the great island.
2. The prosperous allies give aid to the wretched son of the bad sailor.
3. A shadow of darkness fills the place because of the anger of the gods.
4. Wild, shining white wolves depart the deep forest.
5. In a wide plain in darkness they find gold by means of a flame.
6. We, tired and alone, seek food and weapons from our neighbours.
7. Why do you (sg.) write a long letter to the beautiful daughter of the queen?
8. The men kill and drag the evil bull into the temple.
9. When does a new life for the inhabitants of the wretched town begin?
10. She does not say a worthy story to the joyful crowd.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 1st and 2nd declension adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. veterem atque antīquam rem novam ad vōs próferam (Plautus Am.)
2. redde cantiōnem veterī pró vīnō novam (Plautus St.)
3. audēs persōnam fōrmāre novam (Horace Ars)
4. et rābiē fera corda tument (Vergil Aeneid)
5. atque alīquis positā mōnstrat fera proelia mēnsā (Ovid Ep.)
6. postquam ēsurīre coeptā sociātēs fera (Phaedrus)
7. multī erant praetereā clārī in philosophiā (Cicero de Orat.)
8. quī quidem semper erunt clārī (Cicero Att.)
9. cōnsul nihil offēnsus līberā admonitiōne tam clārī adulēscēntis (Livy)
10. fortūna saevō laeta negotiō (Horace Od.)
11. et tyrannō tam saevō, quam quī umquam fuit saevissimus (Livy)
12. tum Silva gemit murmure saevō (Seneca Phaed.)

(a) who will indeed always be famous
(b) and some, with a table set, show the wild battles
(c) then the forest groans with a wrathful roaring
(d) moreover many were famous in philosophy
(e) repay [with] a new song for the old wine
(f) I will mention to you an old and ancient thing, [made] new
(g) after the wild alliance began to be hungry
(h) and her wild feelings swell with fury
(i) you dare form a new character
(j) fortune, happy with her cruel business
(k) the consul, not offended by the free reprimand of so famous a young man
(l) and with so cruel a tyrant, who was as cruel [a tyrant] as there ever was

Exercise 5

Return to Exercise 4 in Unit 2, and try to locate the following 1st–2nd declension adjectives, which are listed in the sequence in which they occur:

- neuter accusative plural
- neuter nominative plural
- neuter ablative singular

Now do the same for Exercise 4 in Unit 3.

- neuter accusative singular
- neuter accusative singular
- neuter nominative plural
- feminine nominative plural

Now do the same for Exercise 5 in Unit 4.

- two neuter accusative plurals in the same sentence
- neuter ablative singular

Now do the same for Exercise 4 in Unit 5.

- masculine dative plural
- feminine ablative singular

Reading: Hercules and the Serpents II


serpentēs serpent [nom. and acc. pl.] ē out of
fortius stronger manibus with (his) hands
est s/he is eās them [acc. pl.]
UNIT 7
Prepositions

Background

A preposition indicates the temporal or spatial relationship of one noun or pronoun to the sentence.

She came home after the symphony. (temporal relationship)
He is going to the store. (spatial relationship)

A preposition may also establish a logical relationship between a noun or pronoun and some other word in the sentence in order to complete the meaning of this other word.

I am happy for the newlyweds. (completing the meaning of the adjective happy)
He always talks about politics. (completing the meaning of the verb talks)
He is the king of England. (completing the meaning of the noun king)

Latin structure

Latin prepositions predominantly establish temporal or spatial relationships.

Where English uses prepositions to establish logical relationships, Latin often simply uses inflectional endings on the noun, such as the genitive, dative, and ablative (see Units 8, 12, 18, 40).

Latin prepositions are grouped by the case they demand on the noun or pronoun they control.
The following take the accusative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud</td>
<td>at the house of, among</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum</td>
<td>around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrā</td>
<td>against, opposite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter</td>
<td>between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob</td>
<td>on account of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praeter</td>
<td>beyond, except</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope</td>
<td>near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super</td>
<td>above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāns</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrā</td>
<td>within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob</td>
<td>on account of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propter</td>
<td>on account of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super</td>
<td>above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāns</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following take the ablative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā, ab</td>
<td>away from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō</td>
<td>in front of, for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē, ex</td>
<td>out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē</td>
<td>down from; concerning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>out of the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex</td>
<td>out of the water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ā generally occurs before consonants, ab before vowels and h-:
  - ā terrā away from the land
  - ab įnsulā away from the island

- ē generally occurs before consonants, ex before vowels and h-:
  - ē domō out of the house
  - ex aquā out of the water

- cum follows and is attached to the personal pronouns (Unit 27), reflexive pronouns (Unit 27), and interrogative pronouns (Unit 26)

Pāx tēcum.
Peace (be) with you.

Pāx vōbīscum.
Peace (be) with you (plural).

Quōcum vēnistī?
With whom did you come?

Two prepositions take the accusative and the ablative with differences in meaning. The accusative implies movement while the ablative indicates lack of movement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>into, onto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>into, onto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In īnsulam īmus. Sub tēctum cucurrit.
We are going onto the island. He ran under the roof.

In īnsulā sumus. Sub tēctō sunt.
We are on the island. They are under the roof.

• causā for the sake of and grātiā for the sake of are unusual in that they take the genitive and are postpositions; that is, they follow the noun or pronoun they control.

Mīlitēs in oppidum bellī causā veniunt.
The soldiers come into the town for the sake of war.

Word order

It is very frequent for an adjective which modifies a noun in a prepositional phrase to precede the preposition:

ex antrō obscūrō
obscūrō ex antrō
out of the dark cave

Advanced topic

Super may occasionally take the ablative as in the following example from Vergil. Note that in addition to referring to physical location, with the ablative it may also bear the meaning about:

multa super Priamō rogitāns
asking many things about Priam

Exercise 1

Translate the following short phrases and sentences into Latin.

1 down from the dark sky
2 into the deep sea
3 away from broad camp
4 at the house of our daughter
5 near the high wall of the country house
6 without the aid of the tired inhabitants
7 through the road into the town
8 concerning the story of the famous poet
9 within the beautiful garden
10 before the unfriendly war
11 on account of the price of gold
12 for the sake of the joy of my family
13 against the wild barbarians
14 out of the water and away from the riverbank
15 The stars shine around the peaceful province.
16 We are afraid on account of the dream of the sacred boy.
17 The ancients believe in the great bear in the golden sky.
18 You (sg.) find food in a dark cave near our town.
19 For the sake of the good people the joyful children sing.
20 With the weapons we rule the wide land.

Exercise 2

Match the following unedited Latin texts from Caesar’s *Dē Bellō Gallicō* with the correct translation. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus
2. ā flūmine Rhodanō
3. dīvisa in partēs trēs
4. in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt
5. ad Hispāniam
6. prō gloriā bellī
7. eīque filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat
8. per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtus Galliae
9. ex agrīs magistrātūs
10. eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat
11. ante hoc tempus
12. propter linguae Gallicae scientiam
13. sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse
14. paulispe apud oppidum morātī
15. sine ûllō perīculō
16. intrā eās silvās
17. ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs
18. propter inīquitātem locī
19. ob eam causam
20. inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt
21. quae sunt contrā Galliās
22. erat ob hās causās summa difficultās
23. hīberna praeter eam
24. sub ipsō vallō
25. ā suīs castrīs

(a) from the river Rhone
(b) they joined with those ones
(c) on account of the difficulty of the place
(d) he had sent his army under the yoke
(e) for the glory of war
(f) before this time
(g) divided into three parts
(h) and he gives to him his own daughter into marriage
(i) delayed for a short time at the town
(j) they wage war in their borders
(k) on account of these things from the letters
(l) through the three most powerful and most stable peoples
   of all of Gaul
(m) out of the fields of the magistrate
(n) from the farthest borders of Gaul
(o) they engaged in battle between carts and baggage
(p) there was the greatest difficulty on account of these reasons
(q) from their own camps
(r) the winter quarters except for that
(s) on account of knowledge of the Gallic tongue
(t) to Spain
(u) for that reason
(v) without any danger
(w) which are opposite the Gauls
(x) under this very rampart
(y) within those woods

Exercise 3

Using the sentences in Exercise 2, try to determine the meanings of the following words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eōrum</th>
<th>eius</th>
<th>ei</th>
<th>finibus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>potentissimōs</td>
<td>firmissimōs</td>
<td>trēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reading: Hercules and the Serpents III


māter mother [nom. sg.]
Herculem [acc. sg.]
est s/he is
clāmōrem noise [acc. sg.]

serpentēs serpents [acc. pl.]
Herculis [gen. sg.]
ille he [nom. sg.]
haec this [nom. sg.]
Background

One key to mastering Latin is to conquer the uses of the independent ablative. The independent ablative is an ablative which is often not accompanied by a preposition.

- The ablative is a multifaceted case with an array of uses.
- This unit and Unit 40 provide an overview of some of its more important and frequent uses.

The various uses differ in terms of:

- whether they complete the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or a noun
- whether or not a preposition is optional
- the sense that the ablative contributes.

These three properties will be highlighted in each of the following sections.

Ablatives which modify nouns

I. Ablative of description (also known as ablative of quality)

Basics:

- Preposition: ---
- Meaning: describing a characteristic of another noun
- Translation: with

  Observe that the noun in the ablative must be accompanied by an adjective in the ablative.

  Ērēgīna magnā animā īnsulam regit. modifies the noun ērēgīna
  The queen with a great soul rules the island.

  Agrōs lātīs horīs vidēmus. modifies the noun agrōs
  We see the fields with wide gardens.
Ablatives which modify verbs

**II. Ablative of means**

Basics:

- Preposition: ---
- Meaning: instrument or means by which the action of the *verb* is completed
- Translation: *by means of,* *by*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Praedam equīs portant.</td>
<td>They carry the loot by means of horses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incolās īnsulae sagittīs oppugnant.</td>
<td>They attack the inhabitants of the island by means of arrows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is frequent with passive verbs (Units 19 and 20)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Templum flammīs dēlētum est.</td>
<td>The temple was destroyed by flames.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**III. Ablative of manner**

Basics:

- Preposition: *cum*
  - *cum* is mandatory when the noun is not modified by an adjective
  - *cum* is optional when the noun is modified by an adjective
- Meaning: manner by which the action of the *verb* is completed
- Translation: *with* or as an *adverb*
  - compare the two translations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cum spē</td>
<td>with hope ~ hopefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum noxā</td>
<td>with harm ~ harmfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum odiō</td>
<td>with hatred ~ hatefully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poëta librōs <em>cum</em> studiō scrībit.</td>
<td>The poet writes books with zeal. The poet writes books zealously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poëta ferō (<em>cum</em>) studiō legit.</td>
<td>modifies the verb <em>legit</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. Ablative of price

Basics:

- Preposition: ---
- Meaning: what something costs, was sold for, was exchanged for.

It is usual with the following verbs:

- *emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus* to buy
- *mūtō* (I) to change, exchange
- *vendō, -ere, vendīdī, venditus* to sell

Translation: *for*

Equōs aurō vendunt. modifies the verb *vendunt*
They sell the horses for gold.

Agrum equīs fortibus mūtat. modifies the verb *mūtat*
He exchanges the field for strong horses.

Villam bonō cibō emis. modifies the verb *emis*
For good food, you buy the villa.

V. Ablative of cause

Basics:

- Preposition: ---
- Meaning: cause of a *verbal* action
- Translation: *because of*

Incolae īrā pugnant. modifies the verb *pugnant*
The inhabitants fight because of anger.

Poēta praemiō magnō scribit. modifies the verb *scribit*
The poet writes because of the great reward.

Ablatives which modify verbs or adjectives

VI. Ablative of respect (also known as ablative of specification)

Basics:

- Preposition: ---
- Meaning: the way in which the meaning of an *adjective or verb* is true
- Translation: *in, with respect to, of*
Filia digna amūre est.  
The daughter is worthy of love.

Vir pulcher comā est.  
The man is beautiful with respect to hair.

Nautae agricolās praedā praestant.  
The sailors surpass the farmers in loot.

Exercise 1

Determine which type of ablative the underlined portions would be if translated into Latin.

1. We are walking with great care.
2. He sells the goats for ten dollars.
3. Out of fear they flee into the countryside.
4. She is beautiful in appearance.
5. They laugh noisily.
6. Blonde in hair, she is admired by everyone.
7. He was injured by the fallen glass.
8. It was exchanged for the necklace.
9. They see the boat with a fresh white coating.
10. Hercules was great in strength.
11. The name with many letters is difficult to spell.
12. Because of love they are kissing each other.
13. The door was shut by wind.
14. The dog runs with speed.
15. He far exceeds his friends in health.
16. The king is worthy of praise.
17. He wants a head with much hair.
18. They sing the song out of joy.
19. They sing the song with their voices.
20. I bought a new car for nothing.

Exercise 2

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an ablative from the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declensions. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
Uses of the ablative I

1. animō īgnāvus, procāx ōre (Tacitus Hist.)
2. nōmen erat magnā apud omnēs glōriā (Cicero de Orat.)
3. ista turpīculō puella nāsō (Catullus)
4. neque tangitur ūrā (Lucretius)
5. ēmit morte immortālitātem (Quintilian Inst.)
6. flagrem dēsiderīō urbis (Cicero Att.)
7. hominēs inimīcō animō (Caesar Gal.)
8. summā virtūte adulēscēns (Caesar Gal.)
9. dōte imperium vendidī (Plautus As.)
10. populus Rōmānus animī magnitūdine excellit (Cicero Off.)
11. clāvī ferreī digitī pollicis crassītūdine (Caesar Gal.)
12. nēmō nisī victor pāce bellum mūtāvit (Sallust Cat.)

(a) men with hostile mind
(b) youth with the greatest courage
(c) I sold command for a dowry
(d) no one, if not victorious, exchanged war for peace
(e) that damn girl with the somewhat ugly nose
(f) iron nails with the thickness of a thumb-finger
(g) lazy in mind, bold in mouth
(h) the name among everyone was of great glory
(i) he bought immortality by death
(j) I may burn from a longing of the city
(k) the Roman people excel in the greatness of mind
(l) and he is not touched by anger

Exercise 3

Looking at Exercise 2 again, what is the 3rd declension ablative singular ending?

Reading: Hercules Kills His Family I


iuvenis young [nom. sg.]  rēx king [nom. sg.]  eī to him
manibus with (his) hands
UNIT 9
Imperfect tense

Background

In English the imperfect tense emphasizes the continuity of an action in the past tense.

*He was walking* to the store, when he saw his friend.
*She was singing* in the shower.

The English imperfect consists of *was/were* + *present participle*. The *present participle* is the form of the verb which ends in *-ing* (see Unit 33).

Contrast the imperfect sentences above with:

*He walked* to the store.

This sentence does *not* emphasize the fact that the ‘walking’ occurred over a given point of time; rather, it treats it as a single event.

Therefore, the English past tense in *-ed* is similar in use to the Latin *perfect tense* (Unit 13).

Latin structure

The endings of the Latin imperfect are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-bam</td>
<td>-bāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-bās</td>
<td>-bātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-bat</td>
<td>-bant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These endings are very similar to the present tense endings (Units 2 and 3) with two differences:

(a) The 1st singular ends in -m and not -ō
(b) An element -bā- occurs in every form. This is shortened to -ba- before word-final -t, -nt (as seen in the present tense) as well as before word-final -m. This is part of a larger Latin rule which prohibits a long vowel from occurring before a word-final -t, -nt, -m, or -r.

Unsurprisingly, the conjugations differ as to which vowel(s) precedes the imperfect endings. Specifically:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>3rd-io</th>
<th>4th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>amābam</td>
<td>vidēbam</td>
<td>dūcēbam</td>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>sentiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>vidēbās</td>
<td>dūcēbās</td>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>sentiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amābat</td>
<td>vidēbat</td>
<td>dūcēbat</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>sentiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. 1</td>
<td>amābāmus</td>
<td>vidēbāmus</td>
<td>dūcēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>sentiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>amābātis</td>
<td>vidēbātis</td>
<td>dūcēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>sentiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amābant</td>
<td>vidēbant</td>
<td>dūcēbant</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>sentiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uses**

Like English, Latin’s imperfect tense is used to emphasize the continuity of a past activity.

**Equōs pāscēbam.**
I was feeding the horses.

**Herculēs stābulum sordidum pūrgābat.**
Hercules was cleaning the dirty stable.

Along these lines, the Latin imperfect is used to express a repeated or habitual action in the past:

**Rēgīna légātōs interrogābat.**
The queen kept asking the envoys.
Advanced topics

The verb *dare to give* maintains a short vowel before the -bā- of the imperfect, while *stare* does not:

*dabam, dabās, dabat, dabāmus, dabātis, dabant*
*stābam, stābās, stābat, stābāmus, stābātis, stābant*

Exercise 1

Convert the following present tense forms to their imperfect counterparts.

| 1 nūntiās | 11 bibimus | 21 canitis |
| 2 cavet  | 12 vidēs | 22 fugimus |
| 3 nocent | 13 veniunt | 23 terreō |
| 4 dīcō | 14 properās | 24 scribit |
| 5 audīmus | 15 flētis | 25 dās |
| 6 crēscunt | 16 pugnat | 26 tacent |
| 7 cupiō | 17 currunt | 27 amō |
| 8 tenēs | 18 geritis | 28 claudō |
| 9 habitat | 19 interficitis | 29 crēditis |
| 10 tegitis | 20 vivō | 30 scītis |

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Mūrōs altōs castrōrum müniēbant.
2 Līberī parvī virōrum et fēminārum īrā rēgīnae timēbant.
3 In campō aurum incola prosperus inveniēbat.
4 Propter pugnam malam et feram fīnitimōrum nostra oppida relinquēbāmus.
5 In āram sacram serva dīgna ramum silvae pōnēbat.
6 Quandō fābulās iūcundās poētae ignōtī legēbātis?
7 Inter equum dēfessum et lupum parvum stābat taurus magnus.
8 Inimīcī ad nostram patriam nāvigābant. Timēbāmus.
9 Ex hortō pulchrō dominum lentum vocābāmus.
10 Properābās in antrum. Quid ibi faciēbās?
Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1. The god was ruling the world.
2. After the battle the teacher of the children was weeping.
3. She was seeking the aid of the master.
4. The unknown poet was writing friendly, new letters to the worthy people.
5. We were buying the broad, harsh field of the farmer.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an imperfect tense verbal form. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. in altum vēla dabant laetī (Vergil Aeneid)
2. vīna dabant animōs (Ovid Met.)
3. recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant (Caesar Gal.)
4. sīc ego currēbam, sīc mē fērus ille premēbat (Ovid Met.)
5. quae necessitās eum tanta premēbat (Cicero S. Rosc.)
6. premēbat illa resolūta marmoreīs cervīcibus aureum torum (Petronius)
7. fugam quaerēbāmus omnēs (Cicero Phil.)
8. nōs īgitur dē orīgīne et ratiōne verbī quaerēbāmus (Gellius)
9. ecce pater tuus et ego dolentēs quaerēbāmus tē (St Jerome)
10. īgitur frātrem exhērēdāns tē faciēbat hērēdem (Cicero Phil.)
11. itaque īnfāctus furor tuus inānis faciēbat impetūs (Cicero Dom.)
12. atque ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat (Caesar Civ.)

(a) and so your broken, empty rage was making attacks
(b) she, relaxed, was pressing a golden couch with her marble-like neck
(c) they, happy, were setting sail [literally: gave sail] into the deep
(d) what so great compulsion was pressing him
(e) lo, your father and I, weeping, were seeking you
(f) therefore disinheriting his brother he made you heir
(g) and voluntarily he made an attack on our [men]
(h) therefore we were seeking about the source and an account of the word
(i) we were all seeking flight
(j) in this way I was running, and in this way that one, wild, was pressing me
(k) the last were not giving a retreat to the first
(l) wines were giving courage
Exercise 5

Return to Exercise 5 in Unit 4, and try to locate the following active imperfect verbal forms, which are listed in the sequence in which they occur:

- 3rd pl. of the 2nd conjugation
- 3rd pl. of the 3rd conjugation
- 2nd sg. of the 3rd conjugation

Reading: Hercules Kills His Family II


crūdēlissimum most cruel
Apollinis [gen. sg.]
volutātēs wishes [acc. pl.]
hanc this [acc. sg.]
nōmine by name
ērē to go
Apollō [nom. sg.]
eās them [acc. pl.]
UNIT 10
Future tense

Background

The English future is rather straightforwardly formed by *will* + the base form of a verb:

*It will rain for sure tonight.*

*We will see each other next week.*

Latin structure

The Latin future, like the present (Units 2 and 3) and imperfect (Unit 9), is formed by the addition of endings. This clearly differs from the situation in English. Recall that the four conjugations differ only with respect to the vowel or vowels which occur before the endings (in the present tense) and stem extension -bā- (in the imperfect tense).

This is not the situation in the future tense. Rather,

- the 1st and 2nd conjugations take a stem extension.
- the 3rd and 4th conjugations do not take a stem extension but only change their thematic vowel.

1st and 2nd conjugations

To form the future tense:

- drop the -ō or -eō of the 1st principal part
- add the stem vowel -ā- and -ē- to 1st and 2nd conjugation verbs respectively
- add the stem extension -b-
- finally, add the following endings: -ō, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt

- Observe that these vowel + endings are identical to the present tense vowel + endings of a regular 3rd conjugation verb.
A synopsis of the conglomeration of stem vowel, extension, and ending is the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st conjugation</th>
<th>2nd conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg. -ābō</td>
<td>-ēbō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 -ābis</td>
<td>-ēbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 -ābit</td>
<td>-ēbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl. -ābimus</td>
<td>-ēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 -ābitis</td>
<td>-ēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 -ābunt</td>
<td>-ēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus to love video, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus to see

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1sg.</th>
<th>2nd conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>vidēbō I will see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>vidēbis you will see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>vidēbit s/he will see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl. amābimus</td>
<td>vidēbimus we will see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 amābitis</td>
<td>vidēbitis you will see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 amābunt</td>
<td>vidēbunt they will see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3rd and 4th conjugations

As stated above there is no stem extension -b- in the future of the 3rd and 4th conjugations. They are only characterized by the interchange of the vowels -a- and -ē-.

To form the future:

- Drop the final -ō of the first principal part
  - if the verb ends in -iō, only drop the -ō
- Add the stem vowel -a- in the 1st person sg. form and -ē- in every other form
- Add the endings: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt
  - shorten -ē- to -e- before -t and -nt
A synopsis of the stem vowel and endings is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3rd conjugation</th>
<th>3rd-īō conjugation/4th conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lsg.</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-i-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-i-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ēt</td>
<td>-i-ēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>-ēmus</td>
<td>-i-ēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ētis</td>
<td>-i-ētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ent</td>
<td>-i-ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the 3rd -īō and 4th conjugations are identical. Recall that their -i- is from the 1st principal part.

Example

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus to lead
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus to seize
sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus to feel, perceive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3rd conjugation</th>
<th>3rd-īō conjugation</th>
<th>4th conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lsg.</td>
<td>dūcam I will lead</td>
<td>capiam I will seize</td>
<td>sentiam I will feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dūcēs</td>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>sentiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>dūcēt</td>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>sentiēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>sentiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dūcētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>sentiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
<td>capiēnt</td>
<td>sentiēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note Knowing the conjugation of a verb is essential in differentiating a 2nd conjugation present tense from a 3rd conjugation future:

docent they teach present of docēre; its future is docēbunt
dūcent they will lead future of dūcere; its present is dūcunt

Exercise 1

Translate the following. Be aware of the conjugation, since some of these may be presents!
Exercise 2

Convert the present tense forms in Exercise 1 into the future, keeping the person and number the same.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 Inveniemus aurum reginae.
2 Hodi sci. Cras non sciam.
3 Post bellum murum novum ferr aedificabimus.
4 Quand per silvas in undas aquae curras?
5 Poenam saevam ira incollis inimicus deis dabunt.
6 Ram magn contr villam prement.
7 Iniuri oculorum poeta inimicus numquam videbit.
8 Cum inimicus pugnab, et insulam solus magn cum laetitiam regam.
9 Tenebris ponti nautae timebunt.
10 Ante cenum filiae viri in ripa equos pascent.

Exercise 4

Translate the following into Latin.

1 You (sg.) will press the wild enemies into the small cave by means of arrows.
2 I will build a road to the town.
3 The goddess will save our wretched neighbours.
4 They will prepare dinner for the crowd.
5 The star will shine tomorrow.
Exercise 5

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a future tense verbal form. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 līberō tē mētū; nēmo crēdet umquam (Cicero Phil.)
2 quid faciam; crēdō, nōn crēdet pater (Plautus Mer.)
3 in diēbus vestrīs quod nēmo crēdet cum nārābitur (St Jerome)
4 et ventīs dare vēla iubēbō (Vergil Aeneid)
5 mortālem ēripiam fōram magnīque iubēbō (Vergil Aeneid)
6 iubēbō nōbīs cēnam continuō coquī (Plautus Rud.)
7 quae mihi venient in mentem (Cicero Fam.)
8 venient super eum horribilēs (St Jerome)
9 cum canibus timidī venient ad pōcula dammae (Vergil Ecl.)
10 sīc igitur faciēs mēque amābis et scripōtō alīquō lacessēs (Cicero Fam.)
11 quem nunc amābis, cuius esse dīcēris, quem bāsiābis (Catullus)
12 valēbis igitur mēque, ut ā puerō fēcistī, amābis (Cicero Fam.)

(a) therefore you will do like this and you will love me and will exasperate me with some writing
(b) whom will you now love? Whose will you be said to be?
   Whom will you kiss?
(c) I free you from fear; no one will ever believe
(d) I will order dinner be cooked for us immediately
(e) and I will order to set sail by the winds
(f) whatever will come into my mind
(g) which in your days no one will believe although it will be told
(h) therefore you will be strong and, as you have done since boyhood, you will love me
(i) what will I do? I believe, that (my) father will not believe
(j) terrifying things will come upon him
(k) I will snatch away their mortal form and will order them to be goddesses of the great sea
(l) with dogs shy deer will come to drink

Reading: Hercules Kills His Family III


Herculis of Hercules  tristis sad [nom. sg.]  urbem city [acc. sg.]
Tiryntha Tiryns [acc. sg.]  rēgem king [acc. sg.]  eum him
ILLE he  tibi to you  SĒ himself [acc. sg.]
CRUDELISSIMAM most cruel
Review of units 5–10

A. Determine the case and number of each of the following nouns. Some may have multiple possibilities. Be sure to determine whether they are masculine or neuter.

1. **antrum**  
2. **ventī**  
3. **campōrum**

4. **virīs**  
5. **puer**  
6. **auxilia**

B. Make the adjective **meus, -a, -um** my agree with each of the following nouns.

1. **templum**  
2. **nautam**  
3. **filiās**

4. **somniōrum**  
5. **filiīs**  
6. **vīlæ**

C. Fill in the blanks with the following prepositions: **ante, causā, cum, prō, sine, trāns**. Use each preposition only once.

Currimus ______ silvam ______ cēnam. Stāmus ______ templō ______

equīs. Laetitiae ______ canimus. ______ morā currimus domum (to home).

D. Which types of ablative would the following be rendered into Latin as?

1. They drink the wine by means of glasses.
2. We could not arrive by car on time because of the traffic.
3. With joy she exchanged her old car for a new bicycle.
E. Use the following verbs to translate.

amō, amāre *to love*
capiō, capere *to seize*
doceō, docère *to teach*
dūcō, dūcere *to lead*
veniō, venīre *to come*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>docēbās</td>
<td>she was loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>they were seizing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>you (pl.) will teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>veniēbāmus</td>
<td>I was leading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
<td>we will come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 11
Irregular verbs I: esse and posse

Background
Most languages possess verbs which do not fit the predicted patterns. Such irregular verbs consist of forms which simply need to be individually memorized.

As compared to other Indo-European languages, Latin has a relatively small set of such irregular verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>esse</th>
<th>fuī</th>
<th>futūrus</th>
<th>to be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>to be able, can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>voluī</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>to want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>nōluī</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>to not wish, be unwilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō</td>
<td>mālle</td>
<td>māluī</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>to prefer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>īre</td>
<td>īvī, īī</td>
<td>itus</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>tulī</td>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>to bring, carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Latin has the advantage that all verbs are regular in the perfect system (Units 13, 14, 20). The peculiarities of the verbs listed above are all confined to the present system: present, imperfect, and future tenses.

This unit focuses on the first pair of verbs above while the remaining five are discussed in Unit 23.

Latin structure

Esse to be

- esse does not follow any of the patterns of the four conjugations because:
  - it lacks a clear vowel between the stem and the endings – at least in the present tense
  - it lacks a clear stem
    - the stem in the imperfect and future is er- while the stem in the present flips between es- and s-
Irregular verbs I: esse and posse

- Its forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>eram</td>
<td>erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>erās</td>
<td>eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE: esse

Notes

- The endings in the imperfect are the same as for the four conjugations: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
  - The imperfect simply has an -ā- in every form and not -bā- as do the four conjugations.
- The future tense shows a change in vowels:
  - -ō (1st sg.)
  - -i- (2nd sg., 3rd sg., 1st pl., 2nd pl.)
  - -u- (3rd pl.)
  - This change of vowels is identical to what we saw in:
    - the present tense of regular 3rd conjugation verbs (ducō, ducis, ducit, ducimus, ducitis, ducunt)
    - the future tense of 1st and 2nd conjugation verbs after the stem extension -b- (amābō, amābis, amābit, amābimus, amābitis, amābunt)
- Third person forms of sum can be translated with there as subject when the context allows it.

Vulgus hīc est.
The crowd is here.
There is a crowd here.

Posse to be able, can

- Knowing the verb esse, one gets the verb posse for nothing.
  - It is formed using the verb esse:
    - Add pos- before those forms of esse which start in a consonant.
    - Add pot- before those forms of esse which start in a vowel
Irregular verbs I: esse and posse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>potes</td>
<td>poterās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>potest</td>
<td>poterat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>possumus</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>poterātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>poterant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE: posse

Syntactic structure

The verb esse is like an equals sign. Every noun that depends on it takes the nominative.

Vir servus est. Virī agricolaē sunt.
The man is a slave. The men are farmers.

As in English, posse usually requires an infinitive to accompany it in order to complete its meaning:

Fīlia hominem vidēre poterat.
The daughter was able to see the man.

Advanced topics

Besides posse a few other verbs are also built using esse:

absum, abesse, āfuī to be absent
adsum, adesse, adfuī to be present
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī to benefit, be useful to [+ dat.]

- for the first two verbs ab- and ad- are added directly to the forms of sum
  abest s/he, it is absent           adsum they are present

- for the third verb, prō- is added to forms of esse starting in a consonant and prod- to forms starting in a vowel
  prōdest s/he, it is useful to      prōsum they are useful to
Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with either a present tense form of esse or a present tense form of posse. Sentences which do not have a pronoun listed in parentheses have an expressed noun subject in the sentence.

1. Virī gladiīs inimīcōs interficere __________.
2. Laetae filiae __________, quod länam __________ vidērē.
3. Quandō (you, sg.) __________ húc venīre?
4. (I) __________ verbīs sacrīs poētae caecus.
5. Navigāmus illīnc, quod pecūnia híc __________.
6. Cibum miserum equus ad vīllam meam in oppidō magnō portāre __________.
7. Postquam in antrō (you, pl.) __________, relinquimus.
8. Rāmīs barbarī castra alta __________ aedificāre.
9. Līberī nōn bibere __________ vīnum!
10. Deae __________ in templīs.

Exercise 2

Go back to Exercise 1, and first convert the present tense forms to imperfect forms and then to future tense forms.

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a verbal form built from the verb esse. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. sī quidem tibi vīvus nōn prōsum (Cicero Planc.)
2. quae prōsum sōla nocendō (Ovid Met.)
3. quibus et rē salvā et perditā prōfueram, et prōsum saepe (Terence Eu.)
4. sī nūllī prōsum, nisī ut in vicem ille mihi prōsit (Seneca Ben.)
5. neque abest suspīciō (Caesar Gal.)
6. fīlius tuus ā mé abest (Cicero ad Brut.)
7. quia ille hinc abest quem ego amō praeter omnēs (Plautus Am.)
8. dum timor abest, ā tē nōn discēdit (Cicero Phil.)
9. quī aderant magnō flētū (Caesar Gal.)
10. quisquis adest, aderant comitēs, terrētur (Ovid Met.)
11. propinquīs necessāriīisque eius, quī tum aderant, verbum nūllum facīt (Cicero Ver.)
12. datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant (Caesar Gal.)
(a) an oath was given by all who were present
(b) and suspicion is not lacking
(c) if I benefit no one, unless that he may benefit me in turn
(d) your son is absent from me
(e) whoever is present – companions were present – is frightened
(f) he does not make a word to his relatives and kinsmen is, who were then present
(g) because he whom I love beyond all is away from here
(h) if indeed I alive am no benefit to you
(i) I, who alone benefit by harming
(j) it does not depart from you, while fear is absent
(k) whom I had benefited in both good times and in destitute times, and whom I often [still] benefit
(l) who were present with great weeping

Reading: The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 1


leō lion [nom. sg.]  Herculī [dat. sg.]  hanc this [acc. sg.]
hīs these [abl. pl.]  id it [acc. sg.]  Herculis [gen. sg.]
pellem skin, hide [acc. sg.]
UNIT 12
Uses of the genitive

Background

Up till now the only use of the genitive we have seen is to indicate *possession*.

*fīlius nautae* the son of the sailor

Since Latin is a heavily inflectional language, the genitive is unsurprisingly used in other situations where English uses a preposition.

While some of these other uses of the genitive do translate as *of* in English, others do not.

Latin structure

I. *Subjective genitive*

- A noun which is the *agent* behind an *act* or *feeling* expressed in another noun is placed in the genitive

  *somnus fīliī* the sleep of the boy, the boy’s sleep
  *odium rēgīnae* the hatred of the queen, the queen’s hatred

- The noun requiring a genitive-subject (*somnus* and *odium* above) represents either an action or feeling and not a physical object.
  - A genitive with a physical object expresses possession and not agency.

II. *Objective genitive*

- A noun which is the *result* of an *act* or of a *feeling* expressed in another noun or adjective is placed in the genitive
memoria rēgīnae  memory of the queen
[ i.e. one remembers the queen ]
odium rēgīnae  hatred of the queen
[ i.e. one loathes the queen ]
cupidus glōriae  desirous of glory

- In cases of ambiguity context will determine whether a genitive is the
  agent or the result of another noun.

III. Partitive genitive

- In order to indicate the whole from which a subset comes, the genitive is used

  pars aquae  part of the water
  nihil librōrum  none of the books
  satis saxōrum  enough rocks

IV. Genitive of description

- A noun in the genitive modified by the following adjectives is used to express
  the inherent quality of someone or something.

  magnus, -a, -um  great
  maxīmus, -a, -um  greatest
  summus, -a, -um  greatest, most
  tantus, -a, -um  so great

- These are most naturally translated into English by means of the preposition
  with.

  fēmina maximī animī
  a woman with the greatest spirit

  Nautās tantī timōris vincimus.
  We conquer sailors with so great fear.
  We conquer sailors who have so great fear.

  - Note that this use is very similar to the ablative of description (Unit 8)
    and there is in fact no difference in meaning.

- The genitive of the demonstrative (Unit 21) eius this can also be used in
  this construction.

  puer eius fūmae  a boy of/with this reputation
The genitive of description may be used with the verb *esse* to be (Unit 11) instead of depending on a noun. Such a use is termed the *genitive of characteristic* or a *predicate genitive*:

\[ tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem \]  
(founding the Roman race was of such great effort)

V. Genitive of material

- Related to the genitive of description is the use of a genitive to describe the material of which something is made.

\[ gladius eius aurī \]  
a sword of/with this gold

VI. Genitive of value

- A *substantive adjective* in the genitive can indicate the value of something.
  - Recall that a *substantive adjective* is unaccompanied by a noun.
  - In translating the nouns *value* or *worth* can be added.
  - Note that since the value does not contain a noun (e.g. *dollars*, *gold*), it is indefinite.

\[ Līberōs magnī habēmus. \]  
We have children of great worth.

\[ Parvī dūcitur. \]  
S/he is considered of little value.

VII. Genitive with certain verbs

- Certain verbs take their objects in the genitive, particularly verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*

\[ meminī, meminissequi \]  
to remember

\[ oblīvīscor, -ī, oblīitus sum \]  
to forget

- *meminī* takes perfect forms (Unit 13) but has present meanings

- *oblīvīscor* is a *deponent verb* (see *Intensive Intermediate Latin*)
  - it takes passive endings (Units 19, 20) yet has active meaning

\[ Tuae patriae meministī. \]  
You (sg.) remember your fatherland.

\[ Librōrum oblīvīscitur. \]  
S/he forgets the books.
Other verbs take a genitive in addition to an accusative in order to complete their meaning, such as verbs of *accusing* and *condemning*:

- *accūsō* (1) to accuse
- *culpō* (1) to blame
- *damnō* (1) to condemn

**Barbarōs iniūriae meae accūsō.**
I accuse the barbarians for my injury.

**Tenebrās perīculī culpāmus.**
We blame the darkness for the danger.

**Finītimōs nostrōs īnsidiārum damnant.**
They condemn our neighbours for treachery.

**Advanced topic**

With numerals and *quīdam certain* (Unit 31), the preposition *ē/ex* is used instead of the partitive genitive.

- *quīnque ē virīs* five of the men
- *quīdam ē agrōrum* certain of the fields

**Exercise 1**

Determine which type of genitive the underlined portions would be if translated into Latin.

1. We remember our parents.
2. A woman of great stature rules this country.
3. They consider the table worth nothing.
4. The sword of iron is too heavy to lift.
5. Love of his family is what drives him.
6. They blame some of the men for the fire.
7. When did you forget my name?
8. Walking through the forest is not a great task.
9. The walls of clay did not survive the storms.
10. Why do you blame him for the crime?
11. The love of a parent for a child is unmatched.
12. Enough of the money was stolen unfortunately.
13 The man with so great a beard is looking right at you!
14 How much is this table worth?
15 Listening to her sing is a great pleasure.
16 The attack of the city was unexpected.
17 We will never forget you.
18 The judge condemned him for arson.
19 I saw a tail of a mouse and screamed.
20 The idea of my sister worked.

**Exercise 2**

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a genitive from the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, or 5th declensions. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 vīr magnae auctōritātīs (Caesar Gal.)
2 maximus vīnī numerus fuit (Cicero Phil.)
3 satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum (Sallust Cat.)
4 ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus (Martial)
5 sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis (Cicero Ver.)
6 nōn multī cibī hospitem accipiēs (Cicero Fam.)
7 damnātiō est iūdicum, quae manēbat, poena lēgis (Cicero Sul.)
8 virī fīunt dōtis nōmine (Cicero Top.)
9 vērnī temporis suāvītāte (Cicero Sen.)
10 cōnsiliī ambiguu (Tacitus Hist.)
11 omnium rērum īnscium (Cicero Brut.)
12 cupidus pecūnīae (Cicero Ver.)

(a) a god himself orders you to remember death
(b) by the sweetness of the spring time
(c) a man of great power
(d) desirous of money
(e) but those ones are condemned of murder
(f) you will receive a guest who doesn’t (eat) much food
(g) ignorant of all things
(h) enough eloquence, too little wisdom
(i) they are made the man’s under the name of a dowry
(j) there was the greatest amount of wine
(k) doubtful of plan
(l) condemnation is of judges, which was remaining, punishment of the law
Exercise 3

Using Exercise 2 try to answer the following.

1. What is the genitive singular ending of the 3rd declension?
2. What is the 5th declension genitive plural ending?

Reading: The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 2


leō lion [nom. sg.]
quod which [acc. sg.]
ōs mouth [acc. sg. nt.]
arborēs trees [acc. pl.]
caput head [acc. sg.]
manūs hands [nom. pl.]
eum him [acc. sg.]
fortissimus strongest
fortēs strong [nom. pl.]
UNIT 13
Perfect active

Background

As seen in Unit 9 the imperfect tense is used to highlight the continuity of an action in the past tense and is effectively equivalent to the English imperfect.

I was walking.

The perfect tense is used to state a one-time action or an action whose duration is not being emphasized. The English equivalent of the Latin perfect is twofold: the simple past and the present perfect:

Simple Past  I walked.
Present Perfect  I have walked.

- The simple past is formed by adding -ed to the base form of the verb (or by vowel change for strong verbs: sing ~ sang).
- The present perfect is formed by using has/have + the past participle.
- The use of these two English past tenses varies from dialect to dialect, but two general rules of thumb for those dialects that maintain a more rigid distinction are that the present perfect is used to:
  - give recent information
    
    It has rained again in Wales.  (present perfect)
  - express an action in a time period which is not finished yet
    
    She has read three books this week.  (present perfect)  vs.  
    She read three books last week.  (simple past)
    She has lived in France since May.  (present perfect)  vs.
    She lived in France from May to July.  (simple past)
  - In the second pair, she still lives in France in the first example while she reasonably no longer lives in France in the second.
Latin structure

Surprisingly Latin simplifies things by expunging the differences between the two English past tenses and simply possessing one tense: the perfect tense.

The perfect tense is one of three tenses which make up the Latin perfect system. The other two will be presented in the following unit.

- The perfect system is formed from the third principal part of the verb.
- All conjugations form the tenses of the perfect system identically. There are no conjugational differences in the endings or in the stems.

To form the perfect active:

- go to the third principal part of the verb (remember a verb has four principal parts):
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>I love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>I loved, have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>I see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>I have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdī</td>
<td>I saw, I have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīsus</td>
<td>I have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>I lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>I have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxī</td>
<td>I led, I have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>I seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>I have seized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>I seized, I have seized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captus</td>
<td>I have seized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentīō</td>
<td>I feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentīre</td>
<td>I have felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēnsī</td>
<td>I felt, I have felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēnsus</td>
<td>I have felt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The third principal part is the 1st sg. perfect active so:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>I loved, have loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>I seized, I have seized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdī</td>
<td>I saw, I have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēnsī</td>
<td>I felt, I have felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxī</td>
<td>I led, I have led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The shape of the third principal part is unpredictable outside of the 1st conjugation.
  
  - 1st conjugation verbs (with a few exceptions) always have an -āv- added to the root.
  - For every other verb it is pretty much unpredictable though some regular tendencies do apply which you will come to see as you acquire more verbs.

- drop the -ī from the 3rd principal part and add the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-istis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg.</td>
<td>düxī</td>
<td>I led, I have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>düxistī</td>
<td>you led, you have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>düxit</td>
<td>s/he led, s/he has led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>düximus</td>
<td>we led, we have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>düxistis</td>
<td>you led, you have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>düxērunt</td>
<td>they led, they have led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced topics**

**Preterite-Present**

There are several verbs (*preterite-presents*) which have perfect forms but present meanings. These verbs can be broken into two groups:

- those that are defective and lack a present system altogether, their principal parts simply being the 1st sg. perfect active and the perfect active infinitive (see *Intensive Intermediate Latin*)

  meminī, meminishēse [+] gen. to remember
  ōdī, ōdisse to hate

- those that have four principal parts but the perfect system forms have a present meaning which is different from the present system’s meaning

  nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus present system: *to get to know, learn*
  perfect system: *to know*

  cōnsuēscō, -ere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus present system: *to get accustomed*
  perfect system: *to be accustomed*

The perfect forms of these verbs are translated as presents:

meminī, meministī, meminit . . . I remember, you remember, s/he remembers
ōdī, ōdistī, ōdit . . . I hate, you hate, s/he hates
nōvī, nōvistī, nōvit . . . I know, you know, s/he knows
cōnsuēvī, cōnsuēvistī, cōnsuēvit . . . I am accustomed, you are accustomed, s/he is accustomed . . .
The past and future tenses of these verbs are filled by the pluperfect and future perfects respectively (see next unit).

**Alternative ending**

A less frequent 3rd pl. ending -ēre exists alongside the ending -ērunt with no difference in meaning.

*Rēgīnam vīdērunt.*
*Rēgīnam vīdēre.*

They saw the queen.

- Note that the present infinitive *to see* has a short -i- in the root: *vidēre*

**Exercise 1**

Translate the following.

1. you (pl.) ruled
2. we believed
3. she loved
4. I know
5. you (pl.) are accustomed
6. they taught
7. she seized
8. you (sg.) remember
9. we hate
10. you (pl.) prepared
11. he saw
12. I carried
13. you (sg.) heard
14. they said no
15. we sang

**Exercise 2**

Translate the following.

2. Socius novus equum prētiō bonō ēmit.
3. Nautae ad terram novam vēla dedērunt.
4. Caecum virum ignōtum gladiō ferrī interfēcērunt.
5. Deō pontī cecinimus.
6. Relīquī, quod timuī.
7. In somniō meō perīculum saevum sēnsī.
8. Cūr in antrō magnīs tenebrīs cum incolīs mānsistis?
9. Corōnam auream deae pulchrae incolae in āram posuērunt.
10. Inter hortōs agrōsque mūrum altum aedificāre cōnsuēvērunt.
Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1. When did you (sg.) see the god of the winds?
2. Why do you (pl.) not remember the story of the blind poet?
3. The crowd did not read the letter of the male slave.
4. Out of joy we ran to the riverbank.
5. The horses descended from the town through the gates of the high walls.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a perfect. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives that stem from some of the Latin words.

1. aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs reliquērunt
   (Caesar Gal.)
2. vēnērunt, quae fortūnās suās reliquērunt
   (Cicero Att.)
3. quī illōrum temporum historiam reliquērunt
   (Nepos Them.)
4. ego vērō neque vēnī et domō mē tenuī
   (Cicero Dom.)
5. vēnī nec puppe per undās, nec pede per terrās
   (Ovid Met.)
6. inter pompae fercula trium verbōrum praetulit titulum, vēnī, vīdī, vīcī (Suetonius Jul.)
7. quī illīus culpā cepit velut prātī ultimī flōs
   (Catullus)
8. cecidit arma contrā patriam fērens
   (Cicero Att.)
9. sīc cūntus pelagī cecidit fragor (Vergil Aeneid)
10. dedimus summam certāminis ūnī
    (Ovid Met.)
11. hunc vestītum atque arma dedimus
    (Cicero Phil.)
12. at tibi nōs dedimus dābimusque etiam
    (Plautus Per.)

(a) who left a history of those times
(b) I came neither by ship through waves nor by foot through lands
(c) we gave the chief part of the contest to a sole one
(d) we gave this clothing and arms
(e) and in truth I did not come and kept myself in my house
(f) in this way the entire uproar of the sea fell
(g) they sought other lands, they left to us our rights, laws, fields, and freedom
(h) who fell by his own fault just as a flower at the edge of the meadow
(i) they came, who left their own fortunes
(j) between the litters of the procession he carried before him an inscription of three words: I came, I saw, I conquered
(k) he fell, carrying arms against his fatherland
(l) but we have given you it and will give it to you again
Exercise 5

Return to the listed exercises in previous units and try to locate the following perfect tense forms, which are listed in the sequence in which they occur:

- Unit 2, Exercise 4: 3rd pl., 2nd sg.
- Unit 4, Exercise 5: 1st sg.
- Unit 5, Exercise 4: 3rd sg., 3rd sg.
- Unit 6, Exercise 4: 3rd sg., 3rd sg.
- Unit 7, Exercise 2: 3rd pl.
- Unit 8, Exercise 2: 3rd sg., 1st sg., 3rd sg.
- Unit 10, Exercise 5: 2nd sg.
- Unit 12, Exercise 2: 3rd sg.

Reading: The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 3

Herculēs nunc bēstiam in umerīs in oppidum rettulit. Multī virī et fēminaē oppidum incolēbant.


rettulit look under referō  cum when pellem skin, hide [acc. sg.]
UNIT 14
Pluperfect and future perfect active

Background

The *pluperfect* and *future perfect* are used to express an activity that occurs before another action.

- The *pluperfect* expresses an activity which occurred further in the past than another activity.
  - In English it is formed by *had* + past participle
    
    *I remembered that I had read about that.*
    *You had left it on the table.*
  
  - The second example would be used in the course of a narrative which is in the past tense. For instance:
    
    *I came early and found the book. You had left it on the table.*

- The *future perfect* expresses a future activity which will occur before another future action.
  - It is formed by *will have* + past participle
    
    *I will have seen the letter by the time I get home.*
    *When the case ends, the jurors will have spent three weeks in court.*

Latin structure

To form the *pluperfect* and *future perfect*:

- Go to the third principal part and drop the final -ī:

  *amāvī → amāv-*
  *vīdī → vīd-*
  *dūxī → dūx-*
  *cēpī → cēp-*
  *sēnsī → sēns-*
• Add the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg.</td>
<td>-eram</td>
<td>-erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-erās</td>
<td>-eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-erat</td>
<td>-erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
<td>-erāmus</td>
<td>-erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-erātis</td>
<td>-eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-erant</td>
<td>-erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūxeram</td>
<td>I had led</td>
<td>dūxerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerās</td>
<td>you had led</td>
<td>dūxeris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerat</td>
<td>s/he had led</td>
<td>dūxerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerāmus</td>
<td>we had led</td>
<td>dūxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerātis</td>
<td>you had led</td>
<td>dūxeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerant</td>
<td>they had led</td>
<td>dūxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note Aside from the third pl. future perfect -erint, the endings are identical to the forms of the imperfect and future of esse (Unit 11).

Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 you (sg.) had been strong  9 we had said
2 he will have placed       10 they had shone
3 I will have hastened     11 you (pl.) will have responded
4 you (pl.) had begun       12 we knew
5 they will hate            13 he had abandoned
6 she will have had         14 it will have extended
7 they had opened           15 she had sung
8 we will have fortified    16 they will have forced
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Postquam puerī vēnerant, laetae erāmus.
2 Quandō villam novam aedificāveris?
3 Cibus bonus fuerat in ārā lātā antī.
4 Agrōrum intrā patriam meminerant incolae īnsulae.
5 Nōn nāvīgābunt quandō ventus malus trāns undās pontī incēperit.
6 Čūr rēgīnāe litterās iūcundās scripserātis? Nōn respondēbit.
7 Noxam fīnitimīs nostrīs lupī lentī et dēfessī nōn dederant.
8 Comam longam puellae pulchrae et līberae vīderit filius servae servīque.
9 Vulgus contrā barbarōs pugnāverat, quandō equōs rēgīnāe gladiīs ferrī interfēcerunt.
10 In mundō antīquō multī poētae caecī et ignōtī fuerant.

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains either a pluperfect or a future perfect. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 praeclārē enim vīxerō, sī quid mihi acciderit (Cicero Mil.)
2 seu maestus omnī tempore vīxeris (Horace Od.)
3 ego crās hic erō, crās habuerō, uxor, ego tamen convīvium (Plautus Cas.)
4 quae vitia quī fūgerit (Cicero Orat.)
5 sī potuerō, faciam vōbīs satis (Cicero Brut.)
6 mulier virum et filium eōdem tempore venēnīs clam dafīs vītā interfēcerat (Gellius)
7 dein catēnīs onerātum, postrēmō interfēcerat (Tacitus Ann.)
8 impotēns amōris interfēcerat (Tacitus Hist.)
9 cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat (Caesar Gal.)
10 mē, quī līber fueram, servom fēcit (Plautus Capt.)
11 cōnsēderam, ubi hesternō diē fueram (Petronius)
12 ille quī vester comes ubique fueram (Seneca Her. O.)
(a) indeed I shall have lived excellently, if something will have happened to me
(b) violent of love he had killed her
(c) I will be here tomorrow, tomorrow, wife, I will have had a banquet all the same
(d) then loaded with chains, finally he had killed him
(e) poison having been given, that woman had killed from life her husband and her son at the same time
(f) whether you will have lived always as gloomy
(g) he who will have escaped these faults
(h) he had killed the consul and had sent his army under the yoke
(i) he made me, who had been free, a slave
(j) I, who had been your companion everywhere
(k) if I will have been able, I will be enough for you
(l) I had sat down, where I had been yesterday

Exercise 4

In the previous exercise there is an example of an archaic 2nd declension accusative singular masculine ending. Can you find it?

Reading: The Lemean Hydra (Labor II), part 1

Paulō posteā Eurystheus iussit Herculī Hydram necāre. Erat mōnstrum alterum, nōmine Hydra.


nōmine by name immortāle immortal [nom. sg.]
caput head [nom. sg. nt.] capitis of head [gen. sg.]
cuiusque of each [gen. sg.] mortalia mortal [acc. pl.]
capita heads [acc. pl.] manū with (his) hand [abl. sg. f.]
UNIT 15
3rd declension

Background

We have already dealt with the 1st declension (Unit 4) and 2nd declension (Unit 5). They are both characterized by a specific nominative singular ending:

- 1st declension: -a
- 2nd declension:
  - masculine: -us (some in -r)
  - neuter: -um

Additionally, they are both lopsided towards one or two genders:

- 1st declension: feminine
- 2nd declension: masculine and neuter

Both of these hallmarks, which occur again in the 4th and 5th declensions (Unit 36), are strikingly absent from the 3rd declension. The nominative singular does not have a generic ending. Additionally, since the nominative stem can differ somewhat drastically from the genitive stem – the stem used in every other form – both the nominative and the genitive singulars will need to be memorized.

The gender of a 3rd declension noun will also need to be memorized since it is not predictable. Some general tendencies do occur, as you will see as you progress and encounter more vocabulary.

For example nouns in -tūs (virtūs courage) and -tās (aetās age) are feminine while nouns in -men (nōmen name) are neuter.

To illustrate, the dictionary form of soldier is mīles, mīlitis (m.).

- The nominative singular of this masculine noun has no discernible ending, so the nominative stem is the entire form mīles.
• The genitive singular form consists of the stem milit- and the genitive singular ending -is. From this stem milit-, the remaining forms are derived.

**Latin structure**

The endings of the 3rd declension are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masc./Fem.</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

1 *Masculine* and *feminine* words take the same endings.

2 *Neuter nouns* take special endings in 3 forms:
   • accusative singular
   • nominative plural
   • accusative plural

3 The slots filled with ----- indicate that there is no set, predictable ending and that the nominative singular form must simply be memorized.
   • For neuters the nominative singular = accusative singular

In order to decline a 3rd declension noun, drop the -is from the genitive singular and add the appropriate endings:

mīles, mīlitis (m.) soldier
lēx, lēgis (f.) law
flūmen, flūminis (nt.) river
Overview of first three declensions

You can tell which declension a noun belongs to by seeing how it’s listed in the dictionary. The genitive singular ending indicates which declension it belongs to.

1st declension: **aqua**, -ae water
2nd declension (masculine): **vir**, -i man
2nd declension (neuter): **frumentum**, -i grain
3rd declension (masculine): **mīles, mīlitis** soldier
3rd declension (feminine): **lēx, lēgis** law
3rd declension (neuter): **flūmen, flūminis** river

Exercise 1

Translate the following. Some words may have more than one possibility.

1 hospitēs 11 itinera 21 pectus
2 pāce 12 pēdum 22 vulnerī
3 flōribus 13 opus 23 patrum
4 aequor 14 gregī 24 ōra
5 nōmina 15 aetāte 25 tempestās
6 mulierēs 16 frātribus 26 equitēs
7 capītī 17 virtūs 27 sōlis
8 sīderis 18 temporis 28 legiō
9 laudum 19 āerem 29 leōnem
10 lēgibus 20 āēr 30 sēmine
Exercise 2

Convert the nouns in Exercise 1 to the opposite number while keeping case constant. If singular, make them plural; if plural, make them singular. Some words may have more than one possibility.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 Nēmō sorōrem meam et frātēs altōs viderat.
2 Prīnceps mīlitēs dēfessōs in legiōnem mōribus Rōmānīs posuit.
3 Agricolae ab rūre fugiunt odōre pecoris.
4 Inimīcī cum mīlitibus nostrīs pugnāvērunt. Post bellum virī nostrī auxilium petēbant ā sorōribus rēgis et rēgīnā.
5 Poētam caecum sceleribus contrā honōrem cīvitātis in carcerem obscūrum iaciēmus.
6 Auctor epistulārum librōrumque opus magnum cīvitātī plēbīque fēcit.
7 Puer laetus sēmina flōrum sub arbore altā invēnit.
8 Cūr labor hominum corpus frangit?
9 Canēs vātis sanguinem taurī bibunt.
10 Rūmōrem mātrī meae dīcam, quod nōn intellegō.
11 Filius fīnitimōrum scelera inimīcī ōdīt.
12 Custōdēs ārae stant ante vātem.
13 Odor flōrum in villam parvam patēbit.
14 Agricola novum gregem taurō ēmit.
15 Mōre īnsulae sacrae virī in itineribus in villā rēgis rēgīnaeque dormiunt.
16 Sōl mundī fulget et tenebrās ā terrīs remōvet.
17 Laetī sunt hominēs canēsque, quod pater deōrum nōn tempestātēs facet.
18 Leōnēs taurōs invēnērunt et interficērunt.
19 Laudem rēgīnae damus, quod pulchra est.
20 Nēmō mīlitum prīncipem legiōnis vidēre poterat.

Exercise 4

Translate the following.

1 The sister of my mother is coming today.
2 The horsemen are able to carry swords of iron on horses.
3 According to the law the king will kill a man on account of a crime of blood.
4 Why do you (pl.) not see the famous legion of the good king?
5 When will you (sg.) make food for the many dogs?
6 My father and mother love my brothers, because they are not in prison.
7 With courage we will be able to conquer!
8 The guardians of the prison give food to the men.
9 The storm will come to the towns of the island tomorrow.
10 The heads of the enemies are in a cave.

Exercise 5

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 3rd declension noun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 canem istam ā foribus aliquis abducat face (Plautus Mos.)
2 satis habuit canem appellāre (Suetonius Ves.)
3 canem illum, invīsum agricolīs sidus, vēnisse (Horace S.)
4 magnam partem aestātīs faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur (Caesar Gal.)
5 tum quod hīs tempestātibus es prope sōlus in portū (Cicero Fam.)
6 sed tempestātibus et ingravēscente vī morbī retentus (Suetonius Tib.)
7 o tempora, o mōrēs, senātus haec intellegit (Cicero Catil.)
8 ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen (Ovid Met.)
9 hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō (Vergil Aeneid)
10 magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnfligēbat (Caesar Gal.)
11 magister equitum, bellī prīnceps, crūdēlitātīs auctor (Cicero Phil.)
12 equitum levia improbus arma praemīsit (Vergil Aeneid)

(a) with great danger to our cavalry he would engage with them
(b) they did [this] a great part of the summer, because our ships were kept back by storms
(c) make it so that someone may lead that damn dog away from the doors
(d) lead this continuous song to my times
(e) then because you are alone in the harbour despite these storms
(f) o times, o customs, the senate understands these things
(g) master of the cavalry, leader of war, author of cruelty
(h) but held back by storms and the increasing strength of his illness
(i) I place on them neither bounds of things nor time
(j) he, wicked, sent forth light arms of the cavalry
(k) [like] that dog, hated constellation for farmers, had come
(l) he had enough to [only] call him a dog
Exercise 6

Return to the listed exercises in previous units and try to locate the following 3rd declension forms, which are listed in the sequence in which they occur. Gender is indicated for the nominative and accusative forms, the two cases in which non-neuters and neuter take different endings.

- Unit 2, Exercise 4: fem. accusative singular, genitive plural, genitive singular, ablative singular
- Unit 3, Exercise 4: neuter accusative plural, ablative singular, neuter accusative singular, neuter accusative plural
- Unit 4, Exercise 5: fem. accusative singular, genitive singular, ablative plural, ablative singular, masc. accusative singular, ablative singular, genitive singular, genitive singular, fem. accusative plural, genitive singular
- Unit 5, Exercise 4: genitive singular, fem. accusative plural, neuter accusative plural, ablative singular, ablative singular, fem. accusative singular, genitive singular
- Unit 6, Exercise 4: fem. accusative singular, ablative singular, genitive singular
- Unit 7, Exercise 2: ablative plural, ablative singular, fem. accusative plural, ablative plural, neuter accusative singular, fem. accusative singular
- Unit 8, Exercise 2: ablative singular, ablative singular, fem. accusative singular, genitive singular, masc. nominative plural, ablative singular, ablative singular, ablative singular, ablative singular, ablative singular, genitive singular, ablative singular
- Unit 9, Exercise 4: ablative plural, ablative singular, ablative singular, masc. accusative singular, masc. accusative singular
- Unit 10, Exercise 5: genitive singular, fem. accusative singular, ablative plural
- Unit 11, Exercise 3: fem. accusative singular, masc. nominative plural
- Unit 12, Exercise 2: genitive singular, genitive singular, genitive singular, masc. accusative singular, genitive plural, genitive singular, genitive singular, ablative singular, genitive singular, ablative singular
- Unit 13, Exercise 4: neut. accusative plural, fem. accusative plural, fem. accusative singular, genitive plural, ablative singular, ablative singular, genitive singular
- Unit 14, Exercise 3: ablative singular, genitive singular, masc. accusative singular
Reading: The Lernean Hydra (Labor II), part 2


manū with (his) hand [abl. sg. f.]  hic this [nom. sg.]
mortālia mortal [nom. pl. nt.]  hoc this [acc. sg.]
quod which [nom. sg.]  eī to it [dat. sg.]
ārdentī burning [abl. sg.]  quem which [acc. sg.]
id it [acc. sg. nt.]
UNIT 16
3rd declension i-stems

Background

The last unit introduced 3rd declension nouns. Among 3rd declension nouns there is a predictable subset which takes certain endings with -ī- or -ī- in them. These nouns are creatively termed 3rd declension i-stems.

Latin structure

The endings of the 3rd declension i-stem are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The unique endings are:

Masc./Fem.: genitive plural -ium
Neuter: genitive plural -ium
nominative plural -ia
accusative plural -ia
ablative singular -ī
Three rules dictate whether a noun is a regular 3rd declension noun or an i-stem one. If a noun satisfies *just one* of the following three rules, then it is an i-stem:

1. If the nominative sg. and genitive sg. have the same number of syllables:
   
   ignis, ignis (m.) fire  
   cīvis, cīvis (m./f.) citizen  
   caedēs, caedis (f.) slaughter  
   mare, maris (nt.) sea  
   
   • Note that canis, canis (m./f.) dog is not an i-stem despite satisfying this rule.

2. The stem of the word ends in *two consonants*, the second one NOT being -l- or -r-.

   nox, noctis (f.) night  
   mēns, mentis (f.) mind

   • pater, patris (m.) father and māter, mātris (f.) mother do not satisfy this rule since the second consonant of the stems patr- and mātr- is -r. They are also exceptions to rule 1.

   • parēns, parentis (m./f.) parent unexpectedly is not an i-stem even though it fits this rule

3. The nominative sg. of a neuter noun ends in -e, -al, or -ar:

   animal, animālis (nt.) animal  
   sedīle, sedīlis (nt.) seat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fire (m.)</th>
<th>night (f.)</th>
<th>sea (nt.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ignis</td>
<td>Nox</td>
<td>Mare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Ignis</td>
<td>Noctis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Ignī</td>
<td>Noctī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Ignem</td>
<td>Noctem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Igne</td>
<td>Nocte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>Ignēs</td>
<td>Noctēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Ignium</td>
<td>Noctium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Ignibus</td>
<td>Noctibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>Ignēs</td>
<td>Noctēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Ignibus</td>
<td>Noctibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced topics

Certain other masculine/feminine i-stem endings occur, some more frequently with specific words.

Masc./Fem.:
- accusative singular: -im
- ablative singular: -ī
- accusative plural: -īs

Sē ex nāvī prōiēcit (Caesar Gal.)
He threw himself forth from the ship.

Illa metū puppim dīmīsit (Ovid Met.)
She let go of the ship out of fear.

Hic fessās nōn vincula nāvīs ūlla tenent
(Vergil Aeneid)
Here no chains hold the tired ships.

Exercise 1

Convert each form to the opposite number, then translate. Some words may have more than one possibility.

1 dentī 6 cordia 11 famēs
2 cīvibus 7 serpentium 12 urbēs
3 vātium 8 marī 13 avium
4 adulēscēns 9 amnis 14 animālia
5 vestibus 10 nocte 15 sortī

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 In amnem flūmenque piscēs iacimus.
2 Prōlēs rēgis deōrum pācem faciet et urbēs magnās aedificābit.
3 Inter partēs oppidī est pons longa et alta.
4 Postquam auxilium dē fīnitimīs quaesīverant, fīliōs et fīliam invēnērunt.
5 Hostēs barbarī dē montibus dēscendent et nāvēs nostrās ad aequor trahere incipient.
6 Moenia alta nūbēs tangent.
7 Fame agricolae ovibus mel novum dant.
8 Sociōs vir igne rubrō monēbat.
9 Incolās īnsulae inimīcī igne terrent.
10 Mortis mātris poēta caecus meminit.
11 Nōn nōvimus fīnēs orbīs terrārum.
12 Mēns mea in capite meō est.
13 Corpora, aurēs, dentēs, ōra, comam, cordia, oculōs habēmus.
14 Animālia in amne stant, quod piscēs quaerunt.
15 Custōdēs ārae sacrae ignem rāmis crēscunt.
16 Pontem trāns flūmen aedificābimus.
17 Aqua dē nūbibus tegit orbem terrārum, et populī laetī sunt.
18 Quod serpēns malus puerum interfēcerat, auxilium dē régē quaeśīvimus.
19 Dē ponte novō in amnem parvum cecidit.
20 Sīdera nūbibus multīs vidēre nōn possūmus.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 The young men always find sacred animals because of luck.
2 The enemies broke our new bridge.
3 When will you (sg.) give wine to the offspring of the queen?
4 The small, radiant ships were sailing on the deep sea.
5 Because of hunger we went into the forest and found fish in streams.
6 Because of the ramparts the barbarians could not attack the country house of my parents.
7 We do not sell clothing for honey.
8 The soothsayers say words to the citizens in front of a wild fire.
9 They heard the rumours about the high mountains under the seas.
10 Why will you have (pl.) run around the world?

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 3rd declension i-stem noun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
Reading: The Fight with the Centaurs (Labor III), part 1

Dum Herculēs iter in Arcadiam fēcit, in regiōnem Centaurōrum vēnit. Ūnus ex Centaurōrum, nōmine Pholus, Herculēm benīgnē excēpit et cēnam eī parāvit. Post cēnam vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit, quod vīnum amābat. Centaurī amphoram vīnō optimō in antrum dēposuerant.

“Cuius vīnum est hoc?” interrogāvit Herculēs.
Pholus dīxit, “vīnum Centaurōrum est.”
“Possumne id bibere?” postulāvit.
“Nōn potes. Centaurī mē interficiunt, sī amphoram aperuerō.”

eī to him [dat. sg.] cuius whose hoc this [nom. sg. nt.]
-ne [indicates a question] id it [acc. sg.] mē me [acc. sg.]
UNIT 17

3rd declension adjectives

Background

Not all adjectives are 1st–2nd declension adjectives (Unit 6). Those that are not are 3rd declension adjectives. As the name suggests, they take 3rd declension endings.

They have two noteworthy peculiarities:

1. They are all *i*-stems (Unit 16)
2. They are broken into three groups depending upon how many gender distinctions are made in the nominative singular:
   - 3 terminations: 3-way gender contrast in the nominative sg.
   - 2 terminations: 2-way gender contrast in the nominative sg.
   - 1 termination: no gender contrast in the nominative sg.

Each adjective follows only one of the patterns. That is, each adjective is either a 1st–2nd declension adjective or a 3rd declension adjective, and within the latter a 3, 2, or 1 termination adjective.

- Note that every 1st–2nd declension adjective is 3 terminations since there is a 3-way gender contrast in the nominative sg.
Latin structure

Three terminations (ācer, ācris, ācre sharp)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two terminations (fortis, forte strong)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M/F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
<th>M/F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fortēm</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One termination (ingēns, ingentis huge)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M/F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
<th>M/F</th>
<th>Nt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ingēns</td>
<td>ingēns</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ingentī</td>
<td>ingentī</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ingentem</td>
<td>ingēns</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ingentī</td>
<td>ingentī</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Notes**

- The ablative singular is -ī for all three genders, not just neuters as was the case with 3rd declension i-stem nouns (Unit 16)
- -īs occurs in lieu of -ēs as the masculine/feminine accusative plural sometimes in poetry
- An adjective has:
  - **3-terminations** if the dictionary presents three forms
  - **2-terminations** if the dictionary presents two forms, the second of which ends in -ē
  - **1-termination** if the dictionary presents two forms, the second of which ends in -īs
- As with 1st–2nd declension adjectives, 3rd declension adjectives may also be used substantively:

  **Nunc fortēs pugnant.** Now they fight the strong (men).

**Exercise 1**

Make the following three adjectives agree with each of the nouns below. Since some of the nouns may be in more than one case, there may be more than one answer for a few.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ācer, ācris, ācre</th>
<th>fortis, forte</th>
<th>recēns, recentis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 gladiōs</td>
<td>8 ovēs</td>
<td>15 auctōrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sanguinis</td>
<td>9 vulnera</td>
<td>16 igne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sociī</td>
<td>10 rēgīnae</td>
<td>17 aequorī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 puerō</td>
<td>11 filiārum</td>
<td>18 vīnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ager</td>
<td>12 mīlitum</td>
<td>19 famēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 canibus</td>
<td>13 ārīs</td>
<td>20 pugnās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 silvā</td>
<td>14 cīvibus</td>
<td>21 cordī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Fēlīcēs virī vident sōlem et antrum triste reliquunt.
2 Avis sapiēns inveniet mel dulce in arbore parvā.
3 Postquam mātrem nōbilis virī interfēcerat, turpis ex oppidō cucurrit.
4 Ob bellum ācre crūdēleque parentēs multōrum mīlitum fortium flent.
5 Nōn potestis in frequentī villā stāre.
6 Equus celer fuit animal deī immortālis, rēgis omnium hominum animāliumque.
7 Cūr nōn dat pauperibus populīs dīves dominus?
8 Potorant ingentēs villās laetīs urbis aedificāre.
9 Honōrem senibus nostrīs līberī oppidōrum īnsulae semper dant.
10 Gravēs librōs dē infēlicibus rēgīnae rēgisque scrīpsit.
11 Post brevem annum, nōn regam et discēdam.
12 Nāvēs nautārum infēlicium nōn mōvit ventus levis.
13 Multus numerus nostrōrum sociōrum auxilium portābit et recentī bellō mūrōs novōs aedificābit.
14 Nōn bibō vīnum mītem, sed canēs meī bibunt.
15 Servus humilis labōrem facit, sed pecūniam nōn optat. Optat novam līberam vītam.
16 Omnēs urbīs ibi aderunt.
17 Poēta caecus, sapiēns, et senex docet līberōs oppidī.
18 Timēmus ventum celerem fortēmque in tempestāte crūdēlī.
19 Quis nōn immortālis vītae memīnit?
20 Odor mītis florīs implēbat villam.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 The cruel masters close the borders of the camp.
2 The immortal god made all men of the world.
3 Disgraceful men and women had run through the crowded streets.
4 The soothsayer will have divided the fat sheep and sweet wine for the crowd.
5 The author will write about all the sweet smells of the flowers of the small garden.
6 The animals fought with keen eyes.
7 The sad and old servants will seek aid of the wise soothsayer.
8 The life of the soldier is short. An arrow through the heart can kill him.
9 Happy children always sing with the beautiful birds on the riverbank.
10 You (pl.) will fight for your noble fatherland and you (pl.) will save our humble king.
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 3rd declension adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 quae pōmīs intersita dulcisbus ornant (Lucretius)
2 dulcisbus indulget lacrimīs aperītique dolōrem (Valerius Flaccus)
3 sed in dulcisbus aquīs lūnae alimentum esse, sīcut in marīnīs sōlis (Pliny the Elder)
4 quam septem ingentia victor corpora fundat humī (Vergil Aeneid)
5 tantūrum ingentia septem terga boum plumbō īnsūtō ferrōque rigēbant (Vergil Aeneid)
6 intrāque quartum mēnsem periit, ingentia facinora ausus (Suetonius Cal.)
7 quod supplicium satis ācre reperiētur (Cicero S. Rosc.)
8 et genus ācre lupōrum atque canum (Vergil G.)
9 et missae cohortēs ācre proelium fēcēre (Tacitus Ann.)
10 fortem et liberum animum, quō et cōnsul et nunc cōnsulāris rem pūblicam vindicatī (Cicero ad Brut.)
11 inventum tamen esse fortem amīcum ex eādem familiā (Cicero Ver.)
12 eum sorōrem dēspondisse suam in tam fortem familiam (Plautus Trin.)

(a) what sufficiently severe punishment will be found
(b) till he, victorious, laid low seven huge bodies on the ground
(c) that he had pledged his own sister into so strong a family
(d) seven huge hides of such great oxen were rigid, with lead and iron having been sewn in
(e) which they adorn placed amongst sweet fruit trees
(f) and the sent cohorts made a fierce battle
(g) both the fierce kind of wolves and dogs
(h) he indulges sweet tears and opens his sorrow
(i) nevertheless a strong friend was found from the same family
(j) within the fourth month he died, having dared enormous crimes
(k) but as the nourishment of the moon is in sweet waters, likewise that of the sun is in sea waters
(l) that strong and free spirit, by which you both as consul and now as ex-consul have protected the republic
Reading: The Fight with the Centaurs (Labor III), part 2


quōs whom [acc. pl.]  qui who [nom. sg.]
Review of units 11–17

A. Translate the following.

1. they can  
2. you (sg.) could  
3. we are  
4. you (pl.) will be  
5. there is  
6. I will be able to  
7. I will be  
8. they were

B. Which types of genitive would the following be rendered into Latin as?

1. Out of love for my mother I called her on mother’s day.
2. Some of the men do not have houses of wood.
3. He forgot his fear which was so great.

C. Use the following verbs to translate.

- amō, amāre, amāvī to love
- capiō, capere, cēpī to seize
- doceō, docēre, docuī to teach
- dūcō, dūcere, dūxī to lead
- veniō, venīre, vēnī to come

1. they had come  
2. I taught  
3. she seized  
4. you (sg.) will have loved  
5. you (pl.) led  
6. we will have seized  
7. they had loved  
8. you (pl.) have taught  
9. he had come  
10. I will have led

D. Convert the following words to the desired forms.

- animal, animālis (nt.) animal
- flūmen, flūminis (nt.) river
- mīles, mīlitis (m.) soldier
- nox, noctis (f.) night

1. nominative plural  
2. ablative singular  
3. genitive plural  
4. accusative singular
E. Make the adjective *fortis, forte* strong agree with each of the following nouns.

1. templum
2. nautam
3. filiās
4. somniōrum
5. filiīs
6. villae
UNIT 18
Uses of the dative

Background
Up till now the dative has been confined to expressing the indirect object. As with the ablative (Unit 8) and genitive (Unit 12), however, the independent dative possesses a range of other uses, not all of which are naturally translatable into English as to/for + noun.

Latin structure

I. Dative of possession
Many languages do not have a verb to have but rather indicate possession by means of the verb to be.

Latin has both structures:

- habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus
- dative of possession which uses the verb esse

The dative of possession has the following structure:

thing possessed [nominative] + possessor [dative] + form of esse

Vīllae incolīs sunt. The inhabitants have country houses.
   literally: Country houses are to the inhabitants.

Praeda barbarō est. The barbarian has the loot.
   literally: The loot is to the barbarian.
II. Dative of reference

A noun in the dative may indicate the person for whom something occurs, whom something affects, or to whom something refers.

Tempestātēs agricolīs nocent.
The storms are harmful to the farmers

Est vīnum bonum hīc parentibus.
There is good wine here for the parents.

A subclass of the dative of reference is the ethical dative. It is the use of a personal pronoun (Unit 27) to indicate someone with a vested interest in the contents of a sentence. The pronoun is not closely linked to any one item in the sentence.

Hīc est nēmō clārus mihi.
There is no one famous here, in my opinion.
As for me, there is no one famous here.

Vēbēs nunc lūmen sōlis agrōs implet.
Now the light of the sun fills the fields, in your opinion.
As for you, now the light of the sun fills the fields.

III. Dative of purpose

A noun in the dative may indicate the reason why something occurs.

Militēs contrā hostēs lībertātī pugnant.
Soldiers fight enemies for freedom.

Pontem viae faciēmus.
We will build a bridge for a road.

IV. Double dative

A dative of reference and a dative of purpose often occur together in a single sentence. This structure is referred to as a double dative.

Pontem viae populō faciēmus.
We will build a bridge for a road for the people.

Aqua nōn noxae est cīvibus.
Water is not as a harm for the citizens.

Lībrum scrīpsit rēgī honōrī.
He wrote a book as an honour for the king.
V. Dative with adjectives

Several adjectives (Units 6 and 17) take a noun in the dative to complete their meanings. A handful are:

- amīcus, -a, -um friendly
- inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile
- dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar
- similis, simile similar
- idōneus, -a, -um suitable
- pār, paris equal
- proximus, -a, -um nearest

Oppidum finitimōrum proximum nostrō est.
The town of the neighbours is nearest to our own.

Hostēs līberīs nostrīs inimīcī sunt.
The enemies are hostile to our children.

Cibus hic rēgī rēgīnaeque idōneus est.
This food is suitable for the king and queen.

Exercise 1

Determine which type of dative the underlined portions would be if translated into Latin.

1. I do not find that man suitable for you.
2. As for me that man is not friendly to you.
3. We want to attack the enemies for our safety.
4. The father’s new job is a benefit to the family.
5. Why does he look similar to him?
6. What does the lady have?
7. The courts rejected the plea with respect to us.
8. They should not have done that in our opinion.
9. For what are they doing all that work?
10. For whom are they doing all that work?
11. The men have money.
12. He is equal in strength to the gladiator.
13. The attack serves as a danger to the city.
14. The iron will be good material for the sword.
15. He sits nearest to her.
### Exercise 2

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a dative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Passage</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>castrīs idōneus locus</td>
<td>(Caesar Gal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>an nescīs longās rēgibus esse manūs</td>
<td>(Ovid Ep.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sī quid peccat... mihi peccat</td>
<td>(Terence Ad.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī fuit</td>
<td>(Cicero Ver.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>vērē aestimantī</td>
<td>(Livy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ut mihi dēformis, sīc tībi magnificus</td>
<td>(Tac. Hist.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>in cōnspectum vēnerat hostibus</td>
<td>(Caesar Gal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>praedam mīlitibus dōnat</td>
<td>(Caesar Gal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>tuō virō ocūlī dolent</td>
<td>(Terence Ph.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>habēre quaestuī rem pūblicam turpe est</td>
<td>(Cicero Off.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>dōnō neque accipitur</td>
<td>(Sallust Jug.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>libertātī tempora sunt impedīmentō</td>
<td>(Cicero S. Rosc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) nor is it accepted as a present  
(b) a place suitable for camp  
(c) he gives the loot to the soldiers  
(d) the eyes of your husband grieve  
(e) truly to the one judging  
(f) my arrival was neither work nor an expense for anyone  
(g) the times are an obstacle to (my) freedom  
(h) or you do not know that kings have long arms?  
(i) as disfigured to me, thus grand to you  
(j) it is disgraceful to have the republic as a profit  
(k) if he makes some mistake, he makes it to me  
(l) he had come into the view of the enemies

### Reading: The Running Stag (Labor IV)


**cuius** whose  
**id** it [acc. sg. nt.]
UNIT 19
Passive voice

Background

Up till now every verb has been in the active voice. In the active voice, the subject does the action expressed in the verb.

English has a second voice: passive voice. It is used when the subject has the action done to it.

English examples:

**Active:** The man loves the dog.
**Passive:** The dog is loved (by the man).

In expressing the passive, English always needs a form of the verb to be (underlined in the sentences below).

It also uses the past participle form of the verb (loved in the sentences below).

**PASSIVE**

**Present**

The dog is loved.

The dog is being loved.

**Imperfect**

The dog was being loved.

**Future**

The dog will be loved.

The agent is expressed in an optional prepositional phrase introduced by by:

The dog is loved by the man.

Latin structure

The passive of the present system (present, imperfect, future tenses) is expressed via endings alone.
The passive endings which occur in the three tenses of the present system are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 -r</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 -ris</td>
<td>-minī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 -tur</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tenses – and within each tense the conjugations – differ with respect to the stem extensions and thematic vowels used.

**Present passive**

The verbal root and thematic vowels are the same as those which were used in the present active (Units 2 and 3). The sole difference is -e- in the 2nd sg. of 3rd conjugation verbs instead of the expected -i-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thematic vowels + endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lsg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The -(i)- in the 3rd conjugation endings is used by 3rd-īō verbs.
This will be the case in the imperfect and future passives as well.
Note that the endings -r and -ntur shorten the vowel which precedes. This is always true of these two endings.

**Example**

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus to love
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus to teach
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus to lead
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus to seize
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus to listen
Passive voice

1sg. amor I am (being) loved doceor I am (being) taught
2 amāris you are loved docēris you are being taught
3 amātur s/he, it is loved docētur s/he, it is being taught

1pl. amāmur we are loved docēmur we are being taught
2 amāminī you are loved docēminī you are being taught
3 amantur they are loved docentur they are being taught

dūcor, dūceris, dūcitur, dūcimur, dūciminī, dūcuntur
capīor, caperis, capitur, capimur, capiminī, capiuntur
audior, audīris, auditur, audīmur, audīminī, audīuntur

Imperfect passive

The verbal root, thematic vowels, and stem extension -bā- are the same as were used in the imperfect active (Unit 9).

| Thematic vowels, stem extension + endings |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1st  | 2nd  | 3rd  | 4th  |
| 1sg. | -ābar | -ēbar | -(i)ēbar | -iēbar |
| 2    | -ābāris | -ēbāris | -(i)ēbāris | -iēbāris |
| 3    | -ābātur | -ēbātur | -(i)ēbātur | -iēbātur |
| 1pl. | -ābāmur | -ēbāmur | -(i)ēbāmur | -iēbāmur |
| 2    | -ābāminī | -ēbāminī | -(i)ēbāminī | -iēbāminī |
| 3    | -ābantur | -ēbantur | -(i)ēbantur | -iēbantur |

1sg. amābar I was being loved docēbar I was being taught
2 amābāris you were being loved docēbāris you were being taught
3 amābātur s/he, it was being loved docēbātur s/he, it was being taught

1pl. amābāmur we were being loved docēbāmur we were being taught
2 amābāminī you were being loved docēbāminī you were being taught
3 amābantur they were being loved docēbantur they were being taught
Future passive

The verbal root, thematic vowels, and presence or absence of the stem extension -b- are the same as were used in the future active (Unit 10).

Recall that the 1st and 2nd conjugations are characterized by the stem extension -b- whereas the 3rd and 4th conjugations are characterized by the thematic vowel interchange -a- ~ -ē-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thematic vowels + endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1sg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the short -e- in the 2nd sg. of 1st and 2nd conjugation verbs instead of expected -i-:

active amābis passive amāberis

This is the same change which occurs in the 2nd sg. of the present tense of 3rd conjugation verbs (active dūcis vs. passive dūceris).

| 1sg. | amābor | I will be loved | capiar | I will be seized |
| 2 | amāberis | you will be loved | capiēris | you will be seized |
| 3 | amābitur | s/he, it will be loved | capiētur | s/he, it will be seized |
| 1pl. | amābimur | we will be loved | capiēmur | we will be seized |
| 2 | amābiminī | you will be loved | capiēminī | you will be seized |
| 3 | amābuntur | they will be loved | capientur | they will be seized |

docēbor, docēberis, docēbitur, docēbimur, docēbiminī, docēbuntur
dūcar, dūceris, dūcētur, dūcēmur, dūcēminī, dūcentur
daudiar, audiēris, audiētur, audiēmur, audiēminī, audientur
Syntactic structure

As in English the agent of a passive is optional.
When the agent is a person, the preposition ā/ab is used. This is termed the ablative of agent.

Rēgīna ā mīlitibus interficiētur.
The queen will be killed by the soldiers.

Oppidum ā populō nōn servābātur.
The town was not being saved by the people.

When the cause is not a person, ā/ab is not used. Rather, a simple ablative of means is employed (Unit 8).

Rēgīna gladiō interficiētur.
The queen will be killed by the sword.

Oppidum igne nōn servābātur.
The town was not being saved by the fire.

Advanced topic

There is an alternative 2nd sg. ending -re. For example:

- amāre you are loved (amāris)
- amābāre you were being loved (amābāris)
- amābere you will be loved (amāberis)

Note that this alternative is identical in form to the infinitive in the present tense.

Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 interīcitur  8 mūniēbātur  15 bibētur
2 iubeor  9 vidēminē  16 vocāberis
3 dūcentur  10 faciuntur  17 iungēbāris
4 audiēbar  11 excitantur  18 scribitur
5 regētur  12 vertēbāmur  19 cupimur
6 pāscēminē  13 optor  20 claudēbantur
7 emar  14 datur  21 trahēmur
Exercise 2

Change the numbers of all of the words in Exercise 1, keeping tense and person constant. That is, if a word is singular then make it plural. If a word is plural then make it singular.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 Verba fortia à clarō sapientiōque poētā scribuntur.
2 Saxum magnum à militibus contrā moenia urbis saevōrum iaciēbātur.
3 Quandō hodiē cēnā parābitur?
4 Vir in tenebris antrī nigrī inveniētur.
5 Odor flōrum hortī ventō per āerem portābitur.
6 Moenia nova à senibus et iuvenibus aedificāntur.
7 Nōn capiār ā hostibus mēs pācis dulcis causā.
8 Avis parvus in arbore altā nunc vidētur.
9 Civitātibus ā rēgibus prosperīs dīvitibusque dulce mel dabitur.
10 Bellum hodiē nōn incipiētur, quod prīcipēs pācem facere potērunt.
11 Brachium laevum meī sociī sagittā frangitur.
12 Nāvis nova tempestaētibus fortibus contrā undās iaciēbātur.
13 Mīlitēs ā prīcipibus iubēbuntur pugnāre.
14 Taurus ferus sagittīs incolae interficiētur.
15 Fugere cōgimur.
16 Ovēs in agrīs montis ab agricolīs dīvidēbantur.
17 Verba auctōris ā fīliābus filīsque canentur.
18 Vīlla movēbātur ventīs tempestaētis.
19 Verbīs auctōris poētāeque tangēris.
20 Lupus ex agrīs nostrīs trahitur, quod ovēs interficiēbat.

Exercise 4

Translate the following.

1 The letters were being sent by the boys.
2 The kingdom of the nymphs was ruled by the god of the seas.
3 The white sheep will be killed by the farmer.
4 The land was covered by the shade of the clouds.
5 Help will be sought by the sad inhabitants.
6 The danger of the city is not seen by the children.
7 The good food will be seized by the cruel enemies.
8. The sweet wine will be drunk by the happy men and women.
9. The radiant gold on the land was seen by the birds in the air.
10. Why will you (pl.) be driven out of your own fields?

Exercise 5

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a passive verbal form. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. scelus herbāriōrum aperiētur in hāc mentiōne (Pliny the Elder)
2. sed suō tempore tōtūs huīus scelerīs fōns aperiētur (Cicero Phil.)
3. quāerite et inveniētis pulsāte et aperiētur (St Jerome)
4. nōn ea quae finguntur aut optantur (Cicero Amic.)
5. et sī esse vīs fēlīx, deōs ōrā, nē quid tibi ex hīs, quae optantur, ēveniāt (Seneca Ep.)
6. saepe etiam salsē, quae fierī nōn possunt, optantur (Cicero de Orat.)
7. ubī dīvidēbātur, eōque minus altō alveō trānsitum ostendere (Livy)
8. inter concordēs dīvidēbātur (Seneca Ep.)
9. quī annus ōlim in duās tantum partēs dīvidēbātur (Servius Honoratus)
10. tetīgique puellam, sīc etiam tunicā tangitur īlīa suā (Ovid Am.)
11. nec bene prōmerītīs capitur neque tangitur īrā (Lucretius)
12. ex eō cum tangitur ūmbōre (Vitruvius)

(a) the crime of herbalist will be disclosed in this mention
(b) where it was divided, there the passage showed less with respect to a deep riverbed
(c) but the source of all this wickedness will be revealed in its own time
(d) neither is he well seized by merits nor touched by anger
(e) it was divided between harmonious men
(f) and if you wish to be happy, ask the gods that what is desired does not turn out for you
(g) the year was formerly divided into only two parts
(h) seek and you will find, knock and it will be opened
(i) not as those things are imagined or desired
(j) from this when it is touched by moisture
(k) often even humorously, those things which are not able to be done are desired
(l) I touched a girl, in the same way even that she is touched by her own undergarment
Exercise 6

Several passives (or at least passive-looking forms) have occurred in previous units. Locate the passive forms in the previous units. The number and order of their occurrence in each unit is listed below. One of these forms is a deponent verb (see Intermediate Latin) and is only passive in form but active in meaning. Can you determine which verb this is?

- Unit 3, Exercise 4: 3rd pl. present of the 2nd conjugation
- Unit 4, Exercise 5: 3rd sg. imperfect of the 2nd conjugation
- Unit 5, Exercise 4: 3rd pl. present of the 1st conjugation
- Unit 8, Exercise 2: 3rd sg. present of the 3rd conjugation
- Unit 10, Exercise 5: 3rd sg. future of the 1st conjugation
- Unit 11, Exercise 3: 3rd sg. present of the 2nd conjugation
- Unit 15, Exercise 5: 3rd pl. imperfect of the 2nd conjugation
- Unit 16, Exercise 4: 3rd sg. present of the 3rd conjugation
- Unit 17, Exercise 4: 3rd sg. future of the 4th conjugation
- Unit 18, Exercise 2: 3rd sg. present of the 3rd conjugation

Reading: The Augean Stables (Labor V), part 1


“Quid dabis, sï stabulum intrâ vigintï hôrâs purgâbitur?” interrogâvit Herculês. Rëx nôn crëdidit. Opus tam celerîter nôn cônficiëtur.

“Bene,” inquit, “dabô decimam partem omnium boum quï in stabulô sunt.”

tria three [acc. pl. nt.]
adventûs of (his) arrival [gen. sg.]
quï which [nom. pl.]
UNIT 20
Passive of the perfect system

Background

The three tenses of the perfect system (i.e. perfect, pluperfect, future perfect) form their passives with the help of the verb esse to be.

These passives consist of two words:

4th principal part + form of the verb esse

Fourth principal part

The fourth principal part is the fourth and last part of a verb which must be memorized. It is used to form the passive of the perfect system.

It is translated as -ed or -en (see the examples below)

Aside from 1st conjugation verbs which predictably end in -ātus in the fourth principal part, all other verbs take unpredictable fourth principal parts, though you will notice sub-patterns as more verbs are learned:

1st conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō,</td>
<td>amāre,</td>
<td>amāvī,</td>
<td>amātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I love)</td>
<td>(to love)</td>
<td>(I loved)</td>
<td>(loved)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulnerō,</td>
<td>vulnerāre,</td>
<td>vulnerāvī,</td>
<td>vulnerātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I wound)</td>
<td>(to wound)</td>
<td>(I wounded)</td>
<td>(wounded)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2nd conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>videō,</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vidī</td>
<td>vīsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I see)</td>
<td>(to see)</td>
<td>(I saw)</td>
<td>(seen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teneō</td>
<td>tenēre</td>
<td>tenuī</td>
<td>tentus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I hold)</td>
<td>(to hold)</td>
<td>(I held)</td>
<td>(held)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


3rd conjugation

capiō, capere cēpī captus
(I seize) (to seize) (I seized) (seized)

crēdō crēdere crēdidī crēditus
(I believe) (to believe) (I believed) (believed)

4th conjugation

audiō audīre audīvī audītus
(I hear) (to hear) (I heard) (heard)

sciō scīre scīvī scītus
(I know) (to know) (I knew) (known)

The fourth principal part is a verbal adjective. As such it will always take gender, number, and case agreement with the noun it is modifying.

In the passives of the perfect system, the fourth principal part will be agreeing with the subject of the sentence.

Perfect passive

Fourth principal part + present tense forms of esse

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus sum</td>
<td>I was loved ~ I have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus es</td>
<td>you were loved ~ you have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus est</td>
<td>he was loved ~ he has been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sumus</td>
<td>we were loved ~ we have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī estis</td>
<td>you were loved ~ you have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sunt</td>
<td>they were loved ~ they have been loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The forms above are used when the subject is masculine:

Rēx ā populō amātus est.
The king was loved by the people.

If the subject is feminine, amāta and amātae are used in place of amātus and amātī respectively.

Likewise if the subject is neuter, amātum and amāta are used in the singular and plural respectively.
### Passive of the perfect system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg. amāta sum</td>
<td>amātum sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 amāta es</td>
<td>amātum es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 amāta est</td>
<td>amātum est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl. amātae sumus</td>
<td>amāta sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 amātae estis</td>
<td>amāta estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 amātae sunt</td>
<td>amāta sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

**Rēgīna ā populō amāta est.**
The queen was loved by the people.

**Oppidum ā populō amātum est.**
The town was loved by the people.

### Pluperfect passive

Fourth principal part + imperfect tense forms of *esse*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um eram</td>
<td>I had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erās</td>
<td>you had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erat</td>
<td>s/he, it had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erāmus</td>
<td>we had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erātis</td>
<td>you had been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erant</td>
<td>they had been loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future perfect passive

Fourth principal part + future tense forms of *esse*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erō</td>
<td>I will have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um eris</td>
<td>you will have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus, -a, -um erit</td>
<td>s/he, it will have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erimus</td>
<td>we will have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a eritis</td>
<td>you will have been loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī, -ae, -a erunt</td>
<td>they will have been loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 she had been loved       6 the war was begun
2 the city will have been divided 7 our food has been prepared
3 the kings had been touched 8 the people had been driven
4 we will have been frightened 9 a wall will have been made
5 the crowns had been placed 10 the stories have been written

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Nāvēs tempestātibus crūdēlibus āctae erant.
2 Fēlix puer ā mātre patreque amātus est.
3 Ubi vísa erās?
4 Vīnum per noctem ā mīlitibus bībitum erit.
5 Amor inter fīliam rēgis et fīlium agricolae sēnsus est.
6 Servus vocātus erat semper ā dominō.
7 Rūmor dē immortālibus urbī terrārum nūntiātus est.
8 Cupītus odor flōrum erat.
9 Saxa sagittaeque contrā moenia inimīcōrum nostrōrum iacta sunt.
10 Sōl nūbibus tēctus est.
11 Rāmīs arbōrum aedificātae sunt vīllae.
12 Litterae poētae rēgīnae scrīpteae erant.
13 Lupus sagittīs puerōrum interf ectus erit.
14 Ante bellum mūnīta sunt oppida īnsulae ab incolīs.
15 Numerus iūcundōrum agricolārum magnīs dē tempestātibus ā fīliō nautae monitus erat.
16 Êmpetus est canis senex ā dominō novō.
17 Rāmī aquā portātī sunt.
18 Coāctī sumus īre.
19 Verba auctōris clārī audīta erunt.
20 Aurum obscūro īn antrō ā mulieribus pulchrīs inventum erat.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 The fields of beautiful flowers had been desired by the enemies.
2 The young will have been asked by the old.
The frightened boy was held by the mother.
The song was sung by all.
When had you (pl. m.) been seen?

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a passive verbal form in the perfect system. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. nōn causa quae ācta timidē est
2. posteā rēs ācta est in senātū alia nūlla
3. spectātorēs, fāacula haec est ācta, vōs plausum date
4. sed ita fēcisti quō modō paucī nōbilēs in hāc cīvitāte cōnsulēs factī sunt
5. lūdī sunt nōn rīte factī
6. sī patrēs auctōrēs nōn erant factī
7. incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfecτus est
8. ab cīvitāte erat interfecτus
9. interfecτus est propter quāsdam sēditiōnum suspiciōnēs
10. parātæ insidiaē sunt: in statū stat senex
11. sine meō sūmptū parātæ iam sunt scapulīs symbolae
12. parātæ sunt lactūcae singulae, cochleae ternae, ōva bīna

(a) his horse having been roused, he exposed himself to the enemies and he was killed
(b) but you have done so in such a way that few nobles have been made consuls in the state
(c) the games have not been made properly
(d) he has been killed on account of certain suspicions of insurrections
(e) this story has now been done, you, spectators, give applause
(f) one lettuce each, three snails each, two eggs each have been prepared
(g) without my own expense contributions have been prepared for my shoulder blades
(h) not the cause which has been done out of fear
(i) he had been killed by the state
(j) afterwards no other thing was done in the senate
(k) if the fathers had not been made authors
(l) treachery has been prepared, the old man stands in position

id it [acc. sg.]  quod which [nom. sg. nt.]
UNIT 21
Demonstratives I

Background

There are a variety of pronouns in English and Latin. The following gives some illustration as to the different types and where they are dealt with in this book.

- **demonstrative pronouns**: this one, that one, these ones, those ones (this unit)
- **intensive pronouns**: the very one (Unit 22)
- **relative pronouns**: who, whom, whose, that (Unit 25)
- **interrogative pronouns**: who?, whom?, whose?, what? (Unit 26)
- **personal pronouns**: I, you, he, she, it, we, they (Unit 27)
- **reflexive pronouns**: myself, yourself, himself, herself, ourselves . . . (Unit 27)
- **indefinite pronouns**: someone, anyone, something, anything (Unit 31)

This unit discusses *demonstrative pronouns*. A demonstrative is used to point out something definite, whether singular or plural. They differ as to *deixis*, or their reference points; namely, whether the person or thing which is being pointed out is *near* the speaker, *away* from the speaker but still *in view*, or *away* from the speaker but *not in view*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>this one</td>
<td>these ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant</td>
<td>that one</td>
<td>those ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant out of sight</td>
<td>that one (out of sight)</td>
<td>those ones (out of sight)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The pointing out function of demonstratives is encapsulated in the name *demonstrative*, which comes from Latin *dēmōnstrāre* (1) *to point out*. 
When followed by a noun directly, an English demonstrative pronoun becomes a demonstrative adjective.

- Demonstrative Pronoun
  
  *I see that.*
  *Do you understand this?*

- Demonstrative Adjective
  
  *I see that dog.*
  *Do you understand this question?*

**Latin structure**

There are three sets of demonstratives. The first two contrast in deixis whereas the third is unemphatic and predominantly used as a 3rd person pronoun.

- **hic, haec, hoc** this, these
- **ille, illa, illud** that, those
- **is, ea, id** this, that, these, those – unemphatic
  - as a pronoun, **is, ea, id** is used to express the 3rd person personal pronouns *he, she, it, they, him, her, them*

Being pronouns and adjectives, the demonstratives are unsurprisingly declined. Fortunately, there is no difference between the pronominal and adjectival forms.

- Remember, all that differentiates the pronominal guise from the adjectival one is their use in a sentence. When no noun follows, a demonstrative is pronominal (i.e. substantive). When a noun follows, it is adjectival.

**1. hic, haec, hoc** this, these

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

- The plural is pretty easy. Aside from *haec*, the endings are all from the 1\textsuperscript{st} and 2\textsuperscript{nd} declensions.
- The singular is much more peculiar. A strange final -e appears in all the endings.
- There are at least two unsurprising facts:
  - Ablative singulars in -ō- and -ā-
  - The neuter nom. and acc. sg. are identical

Examples:

**Hī mīlitēs hoc oppidum vīcērunt.** (demonstrative adjectives)
These soldiers conquered this town.

**Hī haece vīcērunt.** (demonstrative pronouns)
These (men) conquered these (things).

**II. ille, illa, illud that, those**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

- This time all the plural endings are 1\textsuperscript{st} and 2\textsuperscript{nd} declension endings
- The singular is yet again more peculiar, though we see -ō and -ā in the ablative sg.
- We also see -um and -am in the accusative singular

Examples:

**Illī mīlitēs illud oppidum vīcērunt.** (demonstrative adjectives)
Those soldiers conquered that town.

**Illī illa vīcērunt.** (demonstrative pronouns)
Those (men) conquered those (things).
Ill. is, ea, id he, she, it, they ~ [unemphatic] this, that, these, those

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. is he</td>
<td>ea she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. eius his</td>
<td>eius her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. eī to him</td>
<td>eī to her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. eum him</td>
<td>eam her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eō by him</td>
<td>eā by her</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Aside from the masculine nom. sg., the endings are identical to those of ille, illa, illud
- All the plural forms with eī- have alternatives in ĕī- or just ĕ-
  - masc. nom. pl.: ĕī, ĕī, ĕ
  - dat. and abl. pl.: ĕīs, ĕīs, ĕīs
- The genitive is used to show possession (see the second and third examples below). This is different from the situation with personal pronouns where special possessive adjectives are used (Unit 27).

**Example**

Eī eum vīcērunt.
They conquered it.

Canem eius videō.
I see his dog. ~ I see her dog.

Canēs eōrum videō.
I see their dogs.

- Suus, -a, -um *his own, her own, their own* is a reflexive adjective and can only refer back to the subject.
- eius *his, her eōrum their* (m.), cārum *their* (f.) are not reflexives and hence do not refer back to the subject.

Canem eius audit.
He hears his (someone else’s) dog.

Canem suum audit.
S/he hears his/her own dog.
Exercise 1

Translate the following. Where there is gender ambiguity, provide all possibilities.

1. The daughter of that man loves him.
2. His daughter had come.
3. This daughter of those men is happy.
4. I know this daughter of these men.
5. When did you (sg.) see their daughter?
6. By their own luck they will find gold.
7. By that luck we will wage war.
8. You (pl) remember all these things.
9. That king ruled this island.
10. These gods give swords to them.

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. Lūna fulget et lūx eius hanc terram tegit.
2. Illī nautae in pontō illō fuērunt.
3. Eis pater tacet quod dormit.
4. Vīnum illum hortī eārum bibēmus.
5. Praemium hoc ā deō illō huic vātī datum est.
7. Quandō invēnisti haec loca?
8. Saxīs illīs villae huius oppidi ā eīs aedificābuntur.
9. Līberī eōrum in sīlvā cucurrērunt et ibi animālibus illīs cecinērunt.
10. Hāc sagittā ille interflectus est.
11. Is fīliō suam fābulam dīcit.
12. Is fīliō eius fābulam dīcit.
13. Per hās portās altās venient illī mīlitēs urbis illīus.
15. Suīs vulneribus interflectus erit ille mīles.
16. Illīs tempestātibus gravibus nōn nāvigāre illī potuerant.
17. In hāc urbe frequentī nōn est cibus aquāque.
20. Verba sua nōn audiunt.
Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a demonstrative pronoun or adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. ad haec igitur prius equidem dīcō
2. haec vidēbis et fērēs
3. celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur
4. haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit
5. quī fortūnæ illīūs perīculum fēcerat
6. nec sēsē ā gremiō illīūs movēbat
7. aētās illīūs hoc caecā nocte tegat studium
8. in quibus ad mē epistulōrum illīūs exampla mīsistī
9. post eius mortem
10. eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat
11. filiumque eius impūberem ēgātūm ā patre missum
   in carcere necātum esse
12. nam eum pater eius subēgit
13. mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt
14. eī cāra patria est
15. huic puerō quī est eī vītā suā multō cārior metuit
16. grāttās agō eī
17. hāc pugnā nūntiātā
18. hāc animās ille ēvocat
19. hāc super rē scrībam ad tē
20. sī nārrem tibi hāc nocte quod ego somniāvī dormiēns

(a) if I tell you that I dreamt of this night while sleeping
(b) after his death
(c) on this thing I will write to you
(d) I thank him
(e) time may cover this zeal of that one with blind night
(f) these are conveyed quickly to the enemies
(g) in which you sent to me examples of his letters
(h) and his youthful son, sent as a delegate by his father, was killed in prison
(i) he had sent his army under the yoke
(j) he undertook these kinds of fortification
(k) after this battle had been announced
(l) who had experienced the danger of that fate
(m) by which he calls forth spirits
(n) he fears for this boy who is dearer to him than his own life by much
(o) and he was not moving himself from that one’s bosom
(p) the fatherland is dear to him
(q) for his father compelled him
(r) they sent and they gave themselves to him
(s) you will see these things and bear them?
(t) therefore before I indeed speak to these things

Reading: The Stymphalian Birds (Labor VI), part 1


diēs days [acc. pl.] lacū lake [abl. sg. masc.]
UNIT 22
Demonstratives II

Background

Demonstrative pronouns/adjectives were introduced in the previous unit. Recall that demonstratives point out a definite person or thing. They are opposed to the indefinite pronouns/adjectives (Units 31 and 32), which do not point out a specific person or thing. There are three additional demonstratives in Latin:

īdem, eadem, idem same
iste, istad, istud that/those (damn one(s)), that/those (of yours)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum self, very

Latin formation

Idem, eadem, idem is formed by adding the unchangeable suffix -dem to the forms of is, ea, id (Unit 21).

same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>îdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eïdem</td>
<td>eïdem</td>
<td>eïdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eôdem</td>
<td>eâdem</td>
<td>eôdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>eïdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eôrundem</td>
<td>eârundem</td>
<td>eôrundem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eôsdem</td>
<td>eâsdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
<td>eïsdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

• The neuter idem has only one -d- and not two as expected *id-dem.
• The masculine īdem has an ī- in place of expected is-.
• An -n- occurs wherever an -m- is expected:
  - eundem, eandem, eōrundem, eārundem. A similar thing happens in the forms of quīdam, quaedam, quiddam certain (Unit 31)
• īdem is a variant of the masculine nominative pl. eīdem which is frequent in poetry.
• īsdem is a variant of the dative plural eīsdem of all genders.

that/those (damn one(s)); that/those (of yours)

Iste, ista, istud is declined identically to ille, illa, illud (Unit 21).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istae</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istōrum</td>
<td>istārum</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istōs</td>
<td>istās</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This demonstrative often refers to something associated with the 2nd person (you) and also often has a pejorative connotation.

Iste canis semper lātrat.
That (damn) dog (of yours) always barks.

Virī oppidī istīus veniunt.
The men of that (damn) town (of yours) are coming.

self, very

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum is also declined identically to ille, illa, illud (Unit 21) except its neuter ends in -um instead of -ud.
This demonstrative intensifies the noun it modifies or is taking the place of. The translation *self* here is not the same *self* as used in the reflexive in English (Unit 27).

**Ipse canis semper lātrat.**
That very dog always barks.
That dog itself always barks.

**Ipse ipsam fēminam vīdi.**
I myself saw that very woman.
I myself saw that woman herself.

**Exercise 1**

Translate the following.

1. He himself had been killed by that damn lion of yours.
2. The same sailors saw the queen herself.
3. In the age of knights kings themselves fought the same enemies.
4. We will drink the wine of that island of yours.
5. She will have been seen by the same neighbours.
6. When did you (sg.) feel that wind itself?
7. I was throwing my eyes on the same gold.
8. That temple of yours is being built between our fields.
9. The same blind men had read the same books of the same poets.
10. The damn immortal gods give the poor farmers nothing.
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. Scelera istūs virī faciunt mātrem īnfēlicem.
2. Ipse liberōs amō.
3. Tempestās nova hominēs animāliaque ab eīsdem oppidīs fūgere coēgerat.
4. Quid imperat rēx iste?
5. Interfēcērunt agricolae īdem gregem ovium, sed eīs nōn est.
7. Possumus nōn in urbem ipsam moeniūs īre.
8. Per nōctem longam audīvīmus nihil altō dē ipsō monte.
10. Omnī nocte somnium idem puerō est.
11. Dēfessī sumus, quod cucurrimus lātum circum hortum dominī.
12. Vulgus barbarōrum prope portam ipsam erat.
13. Litterae eadem ab ipsō scribuntur.
15. Fēlicēs puellae gladium eundem ferrī fortis militis vīdērunt.
16. Ventō fortī ille rāmus arbōris istīus meum caput frēgit.
17. Dēbēs ipsa vulgō canere.
18. Meminerāmus nōn verbārum auctōris ipsūs.
19. Ipsa nympha pulchra movēbit illa saxa montis nautīs dēfessīs.
20. Taurōs sociī nostrī portāverant in eadem antra.

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a demonstrative pronoun or adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1 reperiō apud scriptōres senātōresque eōrundem
temporum
(Tacitus Ann.)
2 scriptā egregiam eōrundem memoriam trādunt
(Tacitus Ann.)
3 tertium eōrundem genus ērudītā operātiōne cōnspicuum
(Pliny the Elder)
4 eōrundem libértāti mē parcerē certum est
(Cicero Off.)
5 vidistis ipsō rapere dē rogō cēnam
(Catullus)
6 quī in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur
(Caesar Gal.)
7 cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur
(Caesar Gal.)
8 neque enim ab ipsō ūllae litterae
(Cicero Brut.)
9 tālis iste meus stupor nīl videt
(Catullus)
10 ut quō iste vester expoliōtor dēns est
(Catullus)
11 unde iste amor tam imprōvīsus ac tam repentīnus
(Cicero Agr.)
12 rogus iste cremet mea viscera
(Ovid Met.)
13 aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt
(Caesar Gal.)
14 ipsī inter sē prōvinciās partituntur
(Caesar Gal.)
15 unde mare et terrās ipsī mihi saepe vidēre fit timor
(Ovid Met.)
16 arma dabunt ipsī
(Vergil Aeneid)
17 cētera quae ad mē eīsdem litterīs scrībis
(Cicero Att.)
18 quod ab eīsdem inlectī sumus
(Cicero Att.)
19 ut putem esse commodius nōs eīsdem in locīs esse
(Cicero Att.)
20 adēmit eīsdem agrōs
(Cicero Dom.)

(a) the rest which you wrote to me by the same letter
(b) that we have been misled by the same people
(c) or they themselves wage war in their borders
(d) I find it stated among writers and senators of the same times
(e) so that by it your tooth is more polished
(f) from where is this love of yours which is so unexpected and so hasty
(g) the writings hand down a distinguished memory of the same men
(h) and indeed from him himself there has been no letter
(i) a third kind of the same is noticeable because of its accomplished working
(j) may this funeral pyre burn my entrails
(k) they themselves will give weapons
(l) from where seeing the sea and lands, fear often comes to me
(m) it is resolved that I spare the same men freedom
(n) and it took away the fields from the same people
(o) when he was called at the time of year itself to wage war
(p) they themselves distribute the provinces between themselves
(q) who are forced to take advice in the task itself
(r) that I think it to be more proper that we be in the same place
(s) such this my bewilderment sees nothing
(t) you have seen (her) snatching dinner from a funeral pyre itself
Reading: The Stymphalian Birds (Labor VI), part 2


Note

ā tergō  from behind (literally: from the back)
Review of units 18–22

A. Which types of dative would the following be rendered into Latin as?

1 He sent money for help.
2 The man, who is unfriendly to us, has five children.
3 As for me, this is a crazy idea.

B. Use the following verbs to translate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus</td>
<td>to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō, capere, cēpī, captus</td>
<td>to seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus</td>
<td>to teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus</td>
<td>to lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio, audīre, audīvī, audītus</td>
<td>to hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 doctus erit 6 you (pl. m.) had been taught
2 audiēbatūr 7 I will be heard
3 capiēmur 8 they (pl. nt.) will have been seized
4 amātae sunt 9 you (sg.) were being loved
5 dūcuntur 10 we will be led

C. Rewrite the following Latin sentences replacing every noun with the correct form of the demonstrative pronoun hic, haec, hoc. Then rewrite the same sentences adding ipse, ipsa, ipsum to modify each noun.

1 Puer mātrem amat. 3 Sagittīs virum interficiam.
2 Poēta rēgīnae litterās mittit. 4 Rēgī līberī sunt.
UNIT 23
Irregular verbs II

Latin structure

This unit deals with the remaining five irregular verbs of Latin. For the other two see Unit 11.

1. eō, īre, īvī ~ īī, ītus to go

Like esse (Unit 11) īre is irregular because of its changing stems:

- e- and ī- in the present
- ī- in the imperfect and future

Its forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>ībam</td>
<td>ībō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ībās</td>
<td>ībis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īt</td>
<td>ībat</td>
<td>ībit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>īmus</td>
<td>ībāmus</td>
<td>ībimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ītis</td>
<td>ībātis</td>
<td>ībitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īunt</td>
<td>ībant</td>
<td>ībunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE: īre
PRESENT PARTICIPLE: īēns, īuntis (cf. Unit 33)

Notes

- The stem ī- is predictably shortened before the final -t in it s/he goes
- The imperfect exhibits the same affix -bā- which occurs in the imperfect of the four conjugations (Unit 9).
- The future exhibits the form of a 1st or 2nd conjugation verb (Unit 10) because of the presence of the stem extension -b-. 
The nominative singular of the present participle īēns is what is expected of 4th conjugation verbs. The stem eunt- used for the other forms, however, is unexpected (see Unit 33 for discussion of participles).

The perfect has two stems, ĕv- and ĕ-. Either is acceptable.

Advanced topics

Passive forms of īre occur in transitive compounds formed from it. The expected passive endings are added to the same stems the active endings are added to.

praeter-eō, praeter-īre, praeter-īī, praeter-ītus to overtake

Present Passive:
praetereor I am overtaken                     praeterīmur we are overtaken
praeterīris you (sg.) are overtaken           praeterīminī you (pl.) are overtaken
praeterītūr s/he, it is overtaken             praeterenteuntur they are overtaken

Imperfect Passive: praeterībar, praeterībāris, praeterībātur . . .
Future Passive: praeterībor, praeterīberis, praeterībitur . . .

II. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus to bring, carry

The most striking feature about the principal parts of this verb is the total suppletion, or use of different roots, observed between the present system with fer-, the perfect active with tul- and the perfect passive with lāt-.

As with all irregular verbs in Latin, however, irregularities in form exist only in the present system. Therefore, even though the stems are different, all perfect system forms of this verb – both active and passive – are formed regularly with the expected endings (Units 13, 14, 20).

The present tense and imperative mood are alone irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Active</th>
<th>Present Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>fers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>fert</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE: ferre
PRESENT PARTICIPLE: ferēns, ferentis        (cf. Unit 33)
IMPERATIVE: fer, ferte                      (cf. Unit 28)
Notes

- **Ferre** is effectively conjugated like a regular 3rd conjugation verb which simply loses its stem vowel in five forms:
  
  fers, fert, fertis in the active  
  ferris, fertur in the passive.

  - The same occurs in the imperative where the expected stem vowel is missing from both the singular and plural forms (see Unit 28).

- The imperfect and future are formed regularly according to the 3rd conjugation (Units 9 and 10):
  
  - Imperfect: ferēbam, ferēbās, ferēbat, ferēbāmus, ferēbātis, ferēbant
  - Future: feram, ferēs, feret, ferēmus, ferētis, ferent

Compounds

Ferre forms many compounds by the affixation of prefixes, many of which occur independently as prepositions (Unit 7).

- The forms are conjugated exactly as ferre is.
- The one caveat to watch out for is the transformation of the prefixes before ferre’s different roots.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>af-ferō</th>
<th>af-ferre</th>
<th>at-tulī</th>
<th>al-lātus</th>
<th>to bring to, present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>au-ferō</td>
<td>au-ferre</td>
<td>abs-tulī</td>
<td>ab-lātus</td>
<td>to carry away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōn-ferō</td>
<td>cōn-ferre</td>
<td>con-tulī</td>
<td>col-lātus</td>
<td>to collect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dif-ferō</td>
<td>dif-ferre</td>
<td>dis-tulī</td>
<td>dī-lātus</td>
<td>to differ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ef-ferō</td>
<td>ef-ferre</td>
<td>ex-tulī</td>
<td>ē-lātus</td>
<td>to carry out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of-ferō</td>
<td>of-ferre</td>
<td>ob-tulī</td>
<td>ob-lātus</td>
<td>to offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-ferō</td>
<td>re-ferre</td>
<td>re-ttulī</td>
<td>re-lātus</td>
<td>to bring back, report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suf-ferō</td>
<td>suf-ferre</td>
<td>sus-tulī</td>
<td>sub-lātus</td>
<td>to undergo, endure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

- The perfect tulī was historically reduplicated tetulī (cf. canō I sing, cecīnī I have sung). While this reduplication has been lost, a trace of it survives in the -tt- of rettulī I brought back.
The last batch of irregular verbs is:

- volō, velle, volūī, --- to want, wish
- nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --- to not want
- mālō, mālle, māluī, --- to prefer

Aside from their irregular present infinitives, these three verbs are only irregular in the present tense and imperative mood.

Their present forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>volō I want</th>
<th>nōlō I do not want</th>
<th>mālō I prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- nōlō derives from nōn + the forms of volō
  - contraction has applied in those three forms which begin with vo-
  - mālō is derived from magis more + the forms of volō

The imperfect forms are regular:

volēbam, volēbās, volēbat, volēbāmus, volēbātis, volēbant
nōlēbam, nōlēbās, nōlēbat, nōlēbāmus, nōlēbātis, nōlēbant
mālēbam, mālēs, mālēbat, mālēbāmus, mālēbātis, mālēbant

The future follows the 3rd conjugation:

volam, volēs, volet, volēmus, volētis, volēnt
nōlam, nōlēs, nōlet, nōlēmus, nōlētis, nōlēnt
mālam, mālēs, mālet, mālēmus, mālētis, mālēnt

Only nōlle has an imperative. It unexpectedly takes 4th conjugation forms:

|   | sg. | nōlī | pl. | nōlīte |

As seen in Unit 28, these imperative forms are used to form negative commands of other verbs.
Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1. Vēla dare volēbant nautae, sed nāvēs erant parvae et tempestās fortis erat.
2. Quid māvis? In īnsulam cum mātribus līberōrum īre aut in villā manēre?
3. Hostēs crūdēlēs ab oppidō nostrō abstulimus.
4. Ītis nunc ad agrum. Ībi animālia pascētis.
5. Verba rēgīnae incolīs laetīs poēta, socius rēgis, feret.
6. Pugnāre cum fīnitimīs dē fīnibus eōrum voluit, quod eī nihil fuit.
7. Hic gladius ferebātur ā mīlīte in bellīm istud.
8. Voluērunt ponere rānum pācis in āram templī, quod in somniō eōs deī terruērunt.
9. Villa sapientis virī praeterītur armīs turbā saevā.
10. Cibus in silvā lātā ā filīō dēfessō collātus est.
12. In urbem frequentem ībunt fortēs, quod ībi erunt eīs bona.
13. In aetāte häc māluerant scrībere sapientēs, sed nōn verba omnībus dīxērunt.
15. Corōnam pulchrām invēnerām. Eam servae rēgīnae dare volūi.
17. In aquam lūx lūnae candidae stellārumque fulserat, sed nūbēs nigrae lūcem abstulērunt.
18. Oculī homīnum lūcem etiam in antrīs vidēre volent, sed nōn poterunt.
19. Amīcī poētae mālunt dē antiquībus temporībus audīre.
20. Ferrum et arborēs ferunt in urbem templō deae.

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. When will you (sg.) want to sing the words of those famous poets?
2. My brother preferred to not frighten the joyful dogs by the smell of blood.
3. The wind carries the smell of the flowers across the wide fields.
4. The state had not wanted to wage war against its neighbours.
5. Why did you (pl.) not wish to remain here at my country house after you had drunk wine?
6. His fortunate son was not overtaken by the wild horses in the darkness.
7. Because of my tears I wish to ask the wise goddess for food and water.
8. On account of the dream of my sister, we went to the fatherland of our father.
9. Why does he carry a sword? He cannot find peace with it.
10. They will not want to build a new wall of the villa, because a strong storm will break it.
Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains one of the irregular verbs discussed in this unit. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 sī vitant, fūgiunt, audīre dē tē nōlunt (Cicero Vat.)
2 populus nōn cūrat, princīpes nōlunt, ego quiēscō (Cicero Q. fr.)
3 hunc hominem tam crūdēlem, tam scelerātum, tam nefārium nōlunt iūdicāre (Cicero Ver.)
4 eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit (Caesar Gal.)
5 at quī dextrīs et propriīribus compendīīs ierant (Tacitus Ann.)
6 ex praetōribus, quī in prōvinciās ierant (Livay)
7 nunc iam illa nōn vult (Catullus)
8 ille quidem vult plāra loquī (Ovid Met.)
9 ā quō nihil spērēs bonī reī publicae quia nōn vult (Cicero Att.)
10 tē rūrus in bellum resorēbēns, unda frettīs tulit aestuōsīs (Horace Od.)
11 ea vōx audīta labōrum prīma tulit finem (Vergil Aeneid)
12 sī enim rēctē ambulāvīt quī hanc epistulum tulit (Cicero Att.)

(a) they do not wish this man, so cruel, so wicked, so criminal to be judge
(b) that one indeed wants to say more things
(c) from whom you hope nothing of good for the republic because he does not want
(d) if they avoid (you), they flee, they do not wish to hear about you
(e) this first voice heard brought the end of their labours
(f) the wave carried you to the agitated straits, sweeping you again into battle
(g) now she no longer wants (you)
(h) the people do not care, the leaders do not wish it, I am silent
(i) if indeed he who carried this letter walked correctly
(j) he hastens to them by the same route by which the enemies had gone
(k) of the praetors who had gone to the provinces
(l) but those who had gone by the right and nearer shortcuts

Reading: The Cretan Bull (Labor VII), part 1

UNIT 24
Pronominal adjectives

Background

While most 1st–2nd declension adjectives (Unit 6) regularly follow the 1st and 2nd declensions, a small group of 1st–2nd declension adjectives irregularly take genitive and dative singular endings which mimic those of the demonstrative pronouns ille, illa, illud and is, ea, id.

The nine adjectives are:

- **alias, alia, aliud** other, another
- **alter, -a, -um** the other
- **neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither
- **nūllus, -a, -um** no, none
- **sōlus, -a, -um** alone
- **tōtus, -a, -um** whole, entire, all
- **ūllus, -a, -um** any
- **ūnus, -a, -um** one, alone, single
- **uter, utra, utrum** which of two?

- **alter** and **uter** are both used when discussing a pair:
  
  *Uter vir adveniet?*  
  Which man will come? ~ Which of the two men will come?

- Note the neuter nominative and accusative singular form **aliud** with an unexpected -d.

Using **tōtus, -a, -um** as an example, the forms are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>tōtus</td>
<td>tōta</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtīus</td>
<td>tōtōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
<td>tōtīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td>tōtam</td>
<td>tōtum</td>
<td>tōtōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tōtō</td>
<td>tōtā</td>
<td>tōtō</td>
<td>tōtīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Latin syntax

Alius and alter can both be used correlativelly when in adjacent clauses, meaning the one/some . . . the other(s)

Alius hodiē venit, alius crās veniet.
The one comes today, the other tomorrow.

Alterī rēgem vident, alterī rēgīnam vident.
Some see the king, others see the queen.

When two forms of alius occur within the same clause, each may be translated giving a correlative meaning. That is, each may be translated twice!

Alius aliud fēcerat.
The one had done one thing, the other had done another thing.
One had done one thing. [literal]

Aliī ab aliō inventī sunt.
Some were found by one man, others by another man.
Some were found by another. [literal]

Advanced topics

The genitive singular was often shortened to -ius in poetry, especially with the genitive of alter (alterius).

Dative forms alterae, nūllō, tūtō, and tūtae do occur in classical prose authors. See Exercise 3 for examples of alterae.

There are many compounds consisting of uter, which alone is declined:

utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque whoever of two
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet either one, whichever of the two you please
uterque, utraque, utrumque each of two
utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs either one, whichever of the two you please

• alteruter, alterautra, alterumutrum the one or the other declines both parts.
Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1. *Utrum librōrum legēs?*
2. *Tōtus mundus laudāvit ūnam fēminam, rēgīnam pulchram nōbilemque.*
3. *Amīcus meus ūllum verbum prō rēge negāverat. Ibi stetit et tacuit.*
4. *Altera castra ā sōlō homine aedificāta sunt.*
5. *Alīī servī aliōs dominōs vident.*
6. *Faciētis utrumvīs.*
7. *Agricolae tōtō in monte vīnum alterīus deī petunt.*
8. *Nūllum iter longum faciet, quod tempestātēs ferae oppidō tōtī finitimōrum nocērunt.*
9. *Postquam nāvēs ab ūnsulā reliquērant, lūx neutrīus vīsa est et neutra inventa est.*
10. *Aurēs hōrum animālium sapientium omnēs homēns audiunt. Id nūllus homō scit.*
11. *Timōre famīs auxiliūm dē utrāque deā quaerimus.*
12. *Utrā noxārum incolae illīus ūnsulae fugere cōgentur?*
13. *In silvā malā ūdi ūnam nympha pulchram.*
14. *Alius mīles aliō gladiō interfectus est.*
15. *Dīgnus pecūniae es sōlus.*
17. *Nōlunt ire in ūllum templum, quod ēs pecūnia nōn est.*
18. *Utrum pinguium taurōrum vir caecō sociō suō parāvit?*
19. *Properātis ad alteram urbem, ubi sunt amīcī fēlicēs eōrum.*
20. *Cīvēs aliud nōmen urbis istīus sciunt.*

Exercise 2

Translate the following. Where there is ambiguity in gender, provide all options.

1. Which of the crimes did that damn one do?
2. There was no blood after the crime.
3. The one tooth of the boy fell into the river.
4. Those sailors want to sail around the whole world.
5. The courage of one can bring peace.
6. The enemies had seized neither town.
7. Because they are alone, these children are afraid.
8. He himself read no serious letter.
9. Some came to the town, others went to the island.
10. Which of the jars will you (sg.) drink?
Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a pronominal adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. prīncipiō nequeunt āllius corporis esse sēnsūs (Lucretius)
2. celerius tibi hoc rōmor quam āllius nostrum litterae nūntiārint (Cicero Att.)
3. neque ego āllius cōnsiliī particeps (Cicero Att.)
4. prōvinciae tōfī quam maximum potest mēlitum numerum imperat (Caesar Gal.)
5. id etiam tōfī prōvinciae proderit (Pliny the Younger)
6. sēnsĕrunt tōfī pāstōria sībila montēs (Ovid Met.)
7. atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit (Caesar Gal.)
8. alius iam castra capta prōnūntiat (Caesar Gal.)
9. sī alius ad me prius attulerit (Plautus As.)
10. nē qua legiō alterae legiōnī subsidīō venīre posset (Caesar Gal.)
11. nam huic alterae quae patria sit profectō nesciō (Plautus Rud.)
12. quod alterī praecēperit id ipsum facere nōn posse (Cicero Brut.)

(a) this rumour will have announced to you faster than a letter from any of us
(b) in the beginning the senses cannot exist (without) a body
(c) the one announces the camp is already seized
(d) so that no legion might come to another legion as relief
(e) it will also benefit the whole province
(f) he orders the whole province as great a number of soldiers as it can
(g) for this other one I do not know what really is (her) fatherland
(h) if one carries to me first
(i) and I not a partner of any plan
(j) and one asks another the cause of the confusion
(k) all the mountains felt the shepherd whistling
(l) not able to do that itself, which he commanded to another

Reading: The Cretan Bull (Labor VII), part 2

Mare tranquillus erat, quandō nautae nāvem incolumem ad terram appulērunt. Herculēs statim ad rēgem Crētae properāvit eumque causam adventūs docuit. Rēgī prōmīsit, “Īnsulam ā perīculō līberābō.”

Rēx magnō gaudīō affectus est. Postquam omnia parāta erant, Herculēs ad eam regiōnem contendit, ubi mōnstrum habitābat. Taurum vīdīt. Ad eum cucurrit et cornua eius corripuit. Mōnstrum fortē erat, sed manūs Herculis id firmē tenēbant. Herculēs ergō ingenti cum labōre taurum ad nāvem trāxit et laetus cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

adventūs of (his) arrival [gen. sg.] manūs hands [nom. pl.]
UNIT 25
Relative clauses

Background
Relative clauses are a type of subordinate clause.
A subordinate clause is a clause which cannot stand alone as a full sentence, usually introduced in English by subordinating conjunctions like because, while, since, after, who, whom, that.
Relative clauses are effectively very fancy adjectives. They, like adjectives, are used to describe a noun. The difference, however, is that they are not a single word describing a noun, but a whole phrase complete with an inflected verb.

Different ways to modify a noun

Adjectives:  
The tall man sings
The famous actress has a large salary.
The happy cat took a nap.

Relative clauses:  
The man, who is tall, sings.
The actress, who is famous, has a large salary.
The cat, who is happy, took a nap.

Essential components of a relative clause

1 Relative pronoun: that, who, whom, whose, which
2 Verb: there must be a verb which follows the relative pronoun

Additionally, outside of the relative clause there must be an:

3 Antecedent: a noun to which the clause refers
Some additional English examples:

*The man, whose mother I know, works at the store.*
relative pronoun: *whose*
verb in relative clause: *know*
antecedent: *man*

*The flowers that John put on the table withered.*
relative pronoun: *that*
verb in relative clause: *put*
antecedent: *flowers*

**Relative clauses in Latin**

As in English a relative clause in Latin must have a relative pronoun and a verb. The relative clause must also refer to a certain antecedent outside of the relative clause.

Since the relative pronoun takes the place of a noun (specifically the antecedent) within the relative clause, it has different forms for gender, case, and number, just like the demonstrative pronouns (Unit 21)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuiús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How does one determine which of these 14 different forms to use?

1. A relative pronoun gets its *gender and number* from the antecedent it is referring to.
2. It gets its *case* from what grammatical role it is playing in the relative clause.

*Vir, quī cervum vīdīt, in hāc īnsulā habitābat.* The man *who saw the stag* was living on this island.

In this sentence the relative clause *quī cervum vīdīt* is describing *vir*. Since *vir* is masculine and singular, the relative pronoun that refers to it must also be masculine and singular. To determine which case the relative pronoun is in, we observe what role the relative pronoun is performing in the relative clause. In this instance, *quī* is doing the seeing (*vīdīt*), so it is in the nominative. As another example:
Relative clauses

Vir, cuius māter rēgīna est, in hāc īnsulā habitat. The man, whose mother is the queen, lives on this island.

Again the antecedent is vir; therefore, again a masculine singular relative pronoun is needed. With respect to case, however, the relative pronoun has the role of a genitive in the relative clause; thus masculine, singular, genitive = cuius.

Advanced topic

Relative pronouns are frequently used at the start of sentences in Latin. In such cases the antecedent is in the previous sentence. English uses a pronoun or demonstrative in such situations.

Militēs in oppidum advēnērunt. Quōs postquam vīdimus, laetī erāmus. The soldiers arrived in the town. After we saw them, we were happy.

Exercise 1

Determine the gender, number, and case of each of the English relative pronouns below. Then translate the relative pronoun into Latin. The Latin translation of certain antecedents is provided where the gender is unclear.

1 I saw the man whose dog chased the cat.
2 My brother, who was terrified, ran up a tree.
3 The kings of the island, whom we deposed, were living in a raft now.
4 It snows a lot in winter, which is a very cold month. [hiems, hiemis (f.) winter]
5 Memorize the names which are on the tablet. [nōmen, nōminis (nt) name]
6 The farmer’s daughter, whom I bought a present for, is very beautiful.
7 The love which one has for Rome is unbreakable. [amor, amōris (m.) love]
8 The love with which I am possessed feels wonderful.
9 The laws which the senators wrote are thorough. [lēx, lēgis (f.) law]
10 The laws by which the state is run are thorough. [lēx, lēgis (f.) law]
11 The war, which lasted five years, was costly. [bellum, -ī war]
12 Her sons, whose fields are green, are excellent farmers.
13 The gods, whom we offer sacrifices to, protect us.
14 The winds, by which the walls were knocked down, were dangerous. [ventus, -ī wind]
15 The names whose letters are unclear are those of gods. [nōmen, nōminis (nt.) name]
**Exercise 2**

Translate the following.

1. Filius, cuius pater rēx fuit, agrōs magnōs videt.
2. Servī dominum suum saxīs interfēcērunt, quae in agrīs invēnērunt.
3. Poēta, quem omnēs laudant, dīcit istem hominem malum esse.
4. Vulnēra, quibus mīlitēs interfectī erant, gravia erant.
5. Cōnsulēs, quibus potestās est, légēs populiō scribunt.
6. Tempestās fortis, quam agricolaē vidērunt, nautās terrēbat.
7. Cūr sīdera, quae in caelo sedent, fulgent?
8. Carcer tenebrārum, in quem est iactus inimīcus noster, tacet.
9. Līberī, quōrum pater vēla dederat, sōlī fuērunt.
10. Pugnam, quam animālia per tōtam silvam excitat, barbarī portant.

**Exercise 3**

Convert all nouns in Exercise 2 to the opposite number. If the noun is singular, make it plural; if plural, make it singular. Be aware of necessary changes to verbs and relative pronouns and of *pluralia tantum* nouns – nouns which are always plural!

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following.

1. The daughter of the poet who had found the dog sings well.
2. The storm, which will have arrived, will destroy the towns, which were built on the coasts.
3. Women whose children praise the gods, are happy.
4. You (sg.) ought to give money to the author, whose books were written for everyone.
5. We had sought aid from the king, who did not break our happy spirits and dreams.

**Exercise 5**

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a relative clause. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1. nāvēs longās quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior  
   (Caesar Gal.)
2. īsdem publicīs quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat  
   (Caesar Gal.)
3. nōn dubitāō quīn tuīs litterīs quārum exemplum lēgī  
   (Cicero Deiot.)
4. ingentem strūxiōre pyram cui frondibus àtrīs  
   intexunt latera  
   (Vergil Aeneid)
5. quid mihi futūrum est, cui duae ancillae dolent  
   (Plautus Truc.)
6. in hunc cui videō maximās rēs pūblicae tempestātēs  
   (Cicero Mur.)
7. catēnās singulāriās istās, māiōrēs, quibus sunt iūncītī  
   (Plautus Capt.)
8. addīt eqūōs et tēlā, quibus spoliāverat hostem  
   (Vergil Aeneid)
9. hic eōs quibus erat ignōtus décēpit  
   (Cicero Pis.)
10. ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat  
    (Caesar Gal.)
11. puella nam mīō quae meō sinū fūgit  
    (Catullus)
12. qūi aut ea quaes imperīnt nōn videant  
    (Cicero Catil.)

(a) by the same piles whose lower part remained sound
(b) they heaped up a huge pyre around which they wove gloomy leaves
(c) those single chains, the greater ones, by which they are joined
(d) what will happen to me, whom two servants pain?
(e) he came to that part which had not yet crossed the river
(f) onto him with respect to whom I see the greatest storms of the republic
(g) or who do not see those things which threaten
(h) I do not doubt that among your letters, a sample of which I read
(i) for my girl who has fled from my love
(j) he increases (his) horses and weapons, for which he had plundered the enemy
(k) this (man) deceived those to whom he was unknown
(l) long ships whose appearance was more unusual to the foreigners

Reading: The Man-Eating Horses of Diomedes (Labor VIII), part 1


vescēbantur [+ abl.] they were eating sībi to himself
quam celerrimē as quickly as possible
UNIT 26
Direct questions

Background

A direct question is a sentence which seeks to gain information. In English a direct question is indicated by:

1 A question word

   *How are you doing?*
   *What did you buy?*
   *Where did you go?*

   *Note* that the verb and subject invert their normal position

   • additionally, when the verb is *not* a form of the verb *to be* or a *modal verb* (i.e. *can, could, will, would, must, shall, should, may, might*) then a form of the verb *to do* must be inserted after the question word
   • linguists term this *do-support* and it is an interesting peculiarity of English
   • neither inversion nor *do-support* occur when the question word itself is the subject:

       *Who spoke?*

2 Subject-verb inversion alone (with *do-support* if necessary)

   • This type occurs when there is no *question word*
   • Since such questions expect a *yes-no* answer, they are also termed *yes-no questions:*

       *Are you going?*
       *Did he speak?*

3 Rising intonation alone

   • This also expects a *yes-no* answer:

       *You are going to the park?*
Latin structure

Latin has correspondences of all three types of English sentences, only the first two of which are discussed here. See Exercise 3 for examples of questions dependent on intonation.

Latin question words

The adverbial question words of Latin are:

- *cūr* why
- *quam* how*
- *quam ob rem* why
- *quandō* when
- *quō* to where, whither
- *quam ob rem* why
- *ubi* where
- *unde* from where, whence
- *ut* how
- *quō* how*
- *utrum . . . an* [double question]

* There is no difference in meaning between the various forms of *how*

*utrum . . . an* introduces a question which gives choices for the answer

**Utrum in bellō pugnābis an in agrō laborābis?**
Will you fight in the battle or work in the field?

Instead of *utrum*, the particle *-ne* or no word/particle at all can be used.

* -ne attaches to the end of the first word of the sentence

**Līberne es an nōn?**
Are you free or not?

**Pugnābis an laborābis?**
Will you fight or will you work?

- Further examples:

  **Quam ob rem id fēcit?**
  Why did s/he do that?

  **Quandō mē vidistis?**
  When did you (pl.) see me?

  **Unde venīs et quō īs?**
  Where are you coming from and where are you going?

The pronominal question words of Latin are:

- *quis* who
- *quid* what
Since these are pronouns, they – like all pronouns – can be declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc./Fem.</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Though the singular forms account for most occurrences of this pronoun, plural forms exist as well.

The plural forms are identical to those of the relative pronoun, and thus make a three-way gender distinction in the accusative plural (Unit 25). Note that there is no distinction between masculine and feminine in the interrogative pronoun. This makes some sense since more often than not when we use *who* or *whom* in English we do not know the gender of the person we’re asking about. The same is true, for example, of French, German, Russian, and Spanish, four languages which have vibrant gender contrasts.

A second interrogative pronoun is *utεr, utra, utrum* which (of two). This pronoun was introduced in Unit 24 along with the other pronominal adjectives which take -ĭus in the genitive sg. and -ĭ in the dative sg.

**Examples:**

*Cuius filiam in mātrimōnium dūcis?*
Whose daughter are you (sg.) marrying?

*Quō inimīcōs interfēcisti?*
With what did you (sg.) kill the enemies?

*Utrī crēdiderātīs*
Which one had you believed?

The *adjectival question words* of Latin are:

- *quālis, quāle* what kind
- *quantus, -a, -um* how much, how great
- *quī, quae, quod* which
- *quot* how many

- *quī, quae, quod* is declined identically to the relative pronoun *quis, quid*
  - it most clearly differs from the interrogative pronoun *quis, quid* in that, being an adjective, *quī, quae, quod* must modify a noun
- *quot* is indeclinable
Examples:

Quālis homō es?
What kind of man are you?

Cuius poētae carmina hodī legēmus?
The poems of which poet will we read today?

Quibus līberīs dōna dābis?
To which children will you give the gifts?

Quot lībrōs scīpsit?
How many books did s/he write?

Latin yes/no-questions
Unlike English these questions are introduced by some question word or particle. The basic yes/no-question particle is -ne. It attaches to the end of the first word of the sentence regardless of what part of speech it is.

Vēnistīne? Did you (sg.) come?
Fēminamne vidēs? Do you see (sg.) the woman?

Two additional words which introduce yes/no-questions are nōnne and num.
They differ as to whether they anticipate the answer yes or no.

- nōnne anticipates the answer yes
- num anticipates the answer no

The best way to translate these into English is as tag questions.
Tag questions consist of forms of be, modal verbs, or do which are ‘tagged’ onto the end of a sentence, turning it into a question.
Note that num can also be conveyed by really.
Nōnne translates as a negative tag:

Nōnne militēs rēgīnam interfēcērunt?
Did the soldiers not kill the queen?
The soldiers killed the queen, didn’t they? [yes]

Nōnne venēre potestis?
Are you (pl.) not able to come?
You (pl.) can come, can’t you? [yes]

Nōnne cōgitābātis eum advenīre?
Were you (pl.) not thinking that he would arrive?
You (pl.) were thinking that he would arrive, weren’t you? [yes]
**Direct questions**

*Num* translates as a positive *tag*, which in English requires the main verb to be negated.

Observe the inserted negative in the translations:

**Num militēs rēgīnam interfēcērunt?**
Did the soldiers really kill the queen?
The soldiers didn’t kill the queen, *did they?* [no]

**Num venēre potestis?**
Are you (pl.) really able to come?
You (pl.) can’t come, *can you?* [no]

**Num cōgitābatis eum advenīre?**
Were you (pl.) really thinking that he would arrive?
You (pl.) weren’t thinking that he would arrive, *were you?* [no]

To answer *yes* or *no*:

- either the main word of the question is repeated (and negated in the case of *no*)
- or *certē certainly, etiam even so, ita so, or vērō truly* is used for *yes*, and
  *minimē by no means, nōn or nōn ita for no*

**Exercise 1**

Translate the following.

1. Cui vīnum est?
2. Vēnistisne cum eō?
3. Quālia arma inventa erant?
4. Quot militēs nōlunt pugnāre contrā barbarōs?
5. Unde cucurrērunt tristēs puerī? Ubi nunc sunt?
6. Cūr dās praemiūm laudemque parentibus?
7. Quō amnis it?
8. Quam ob rem bibunt sanguinem ovis illīus?
9. Quandō claudentur portae ingentēs urbīs?
10. Nōnne sapiēns est poēta, quī multās epistulās scripserat?
11. Quis verba deōrum sacrōrum audīre nōn potest?
12. Quō modō moenia nova is aedificābit?
13. In quō somniō viderat locum, in cuius templō erant aurum et pecūnia?
14. Quantōs librōs scripserit miser auctor?
15. Quam ob rem nōn potuī vulgō canere?
16. Cūius mātrem scītis?
17. Fulgetne sōl hodiē?
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. What frightens the small children?
2. When will you (sg.) give our money to the sailor?
3. Who divided the field?
4. By whom were the gates of the wall broken?
5. Will the soldiers fortify their town?
6. Why are you (pl.) not present? You (pl.) are absent!
7. How does the sun shine through the dark clouds?
8. How many stories will the poet read to the crowd?
9. In whose memory was a kingdom of peace being built here?
10. To where was the sailor setting sail?

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a question. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. Tuom parasītum nōn nōvistī? (Plautus Men.)
2. linguam vīs meam praeclūdere? (Phaedrus)
3. Hunc tū vitae splendōrem maculīs adspergis istīs? (Cicero Planc.)
4. Omnisne pecūnia dissolūta est? (Cicero Ver.)
5. Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderis, an prō nihilō id putās? (Cicero Fam.)
6. utrum is clēmēns ac misericors an inhūmānissimus et crudēlissimus esse videātur? (Cicero Catil.)
7. quot vultis esse in ūnō fūrtō peccātōrum gradūs (Cicero Ver.)
8. Quot bella māiōrēs nostrōs et quanta suscēpisse arbitrāminī (Cicero Ver.)
9. quālēs et quot et quotiēns lēgātī ad eōs exiērunt (Cicero Font.)
10. Num iūs civīle vestrum ex librīs cōgnōscī potest? (Cicero Fam.)
11. Num tibi cum fauces ūrit sitis, aurea quae ris pōcula? (Horace S.)
12. Num negāre audēs? (Cicero Catil.)
(a) What kind and how many and how often did the delegates come out to them?
(b) Do you really seek golden cups when thirst burns your throat?
(c) Is all the money paid up?
(d) Can your civil law really be learnt from books?
(e) Do you really dare deny (it)?
(f) You sprinkle this lustre of a life with those spots?
(g) Do you not know how high you rose, or do you think it for nothing?
(h) How many and how great the wars do you think that our ancestors undertook?
(i) How many steps of sins do you wish there to be in a single theft?
(j) You wish to shut my mouth?
(k) You do not know your own parasite?
(l) May he seem to be merciful and sympathetic or most savage and most cruel?

Reading: The Man-Eating Horses of Diomedes (Labor VIII), part 2


mortuus est he died  portū harbour [abl. sg.]
UNIT 27
Personal pronouns

Background

Personal pronouns refer to the participants surrounding a verb. They are best understood by imagining a conversation:

- 1st person and 2nd person involve people who are engaged in the conversation.
  - 1st person refers to the person through whose consciousness the world is being viewed: *I*, *me*, *we*, *us*
  - 2nd person refers to a person who is also engaged in the conversation but through whose consciousness the world is not being viewed: *you*
- 3rd person is someone or something who is not engaged in the conversation: *he*, *him*, *she*, *her*, *it*, *they*, *them*

Latin structure

Personal pronouns

Since pronouns take the place of nouns, they too will have forms for the whole gamut of cases.

In Latin personal pronouns exist for *I*, *you* (sg.), *we* and *you* (pl.).

Unique pronominal forms for the 3rd person (*he*, *she*, *it*, *they*) do not exist but are filled by the demonstrative pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id this*, *that* (Unit 21).
Personal pronouns

### 1st Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><strong>ego</strong> I</td>
<td><strong>nōs</strong> we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><strong>mē</strong> of me</td>
<td><strong>nostrum ~ nostrī</strong> of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><strong>mēhī</strong> to/for me</td>
<td><strong>nōbīs</strong> to/for us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><strong>mē</strong> me</td>
<td><strong>nōs</strong> us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><strong>mē</strong> me</td>
<td><strong>nōbīs</strong> us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2nd Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><strong>tū</strong> you</td>
<td><strong>vōs</strong> you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><strong>tuī</strong> of you</td>
<td><strong>vestrum ~ vestrī</strong> of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><strong>tībī</strong> to/for you</td>
<td><strong>vōbīs</strong> to/for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><strong>tē</strong> you</td>
<td><strong>vōs</strong> you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td><strong>tē</strong> you</td>
<td><strong>vōbīs</strong> you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

- There are two genitives in the plural which are used in different situations
  - nostrum and vestrum are used as *partitive genitives*
    - they express the whole of which something is a part
      - all *of us* omnēs nostrum
      - some *of you* aliquī vestrum
  - nostrī and vestrī are used as *objective genitives*
    - they serve as objects of the noun they depend upon
      - *love of us* amor nostrī
      - *judgment of you* iūdicium vestrī
- The preposition cum *with* suffixes itself to the ablative of the personal pronouns, forming a single word.
  - Pāx vōbīscum.
    - Peace be with you.
- Since the endings on a verb indicate the subject, the nominative forms of the personal pronouns are used for emphasis, contrast or clarity.
  - Sed ego veniam.
    - But I will go [as opposed to someone else].
Possessive adjectives

To indicate possession, possessive adjectives are employed rather than the genitive of the personal pronouns.

The four possessive adjectives are all 1st–2nd declension adjectives:

- meus, -a, -um my
- tuus, -a, -um your (sg.)
- noster, nostra, nostrum our
- vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.)

Examples

Meus canis magnus est. My dog is big.

Ōra nostrōrum canium magna sunt. The mouths of our dogs are big.

The genitives of the personal pronouns (meī, tuī, nostrum, nostrī, vestrum, vestrī) are used only as objective genitives or partitive genitives. Clearly only the plural forms have the ability to serve as partitive genitives (see the examples on p. 154).

- amor meī love of me [i.e. someone else’s love of me]
- amor meus my love [i.e. my own love]

Reflexive pronouns

A reflexive pronoun refers back to the subject of a sentence.

I see myself in the mirror.
He bought himself a present.

The English reflexive pronouns are formed by adding -self or -selves to pronominal forms (e.g. himself) or to possessive adjective forms (ourselves).

Since by definition a reflexive refers back to the subject, the reflexive does not have a nominative form.

- Do not confuse this reflexive use of -self with the emphatic use of -self seen in Unit 22 while discussing ipse, ipsa, ipsum

The reflexive pronouns in Latin are simply identical to the personal pronouns.

Mē videō. I see myself.

Nōs audīmus. We hear ourselves.
There are 3rd person reflexive pronominal forms which do not differentiate between gender or number:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sē audiunt.**
They see themselves.

**Sē audit.**
He hears himself.
She hears herself.

There is also a 3rd person reflexive possessive adjective: *suus, -a, -um*

**Canem suum audiunt.**
They hear their own dog.

All of the reflexive pronouns can also have the *reciprocal* meaning *each other*:

**Nōs audīmus. Sē vident.**
We hear each other. They see each other.

**Exercise 1**

Translate the underlined words of each sentence into Latin. The Latin translation and gender of words modified by possessive adjectives are added for your convenience.

1. When are they going to bring *themselves* over to *our* country house?
   - [villa, -ae *country house*]
2. I hope that *we* will be able to see *your* (sg.) new dog.
   - [canis, canis (m.) *dog*]
3. You (pl.) are going to give me *my* book.
   - [liber, librī *book*]
4. Why do I do this to *myself*?
5. Most of *us* are coming this weekend.
6. You (sg.) are going to be ignored by *me*, if *you* (sg.) continue to bother *me*. 
7 He bought himself his own book because we ourselves didn’t buy one for him.
8 Yesterday your (pl.) mother brought you (pl.) to us.
9 You (sg.) talk about yourself to me all the time!
10 When did he bring us from your (pl.) country house?
11 They bought for themselves some of our food.
12 You (sg.) and I do not like each other.
13 When is he coming to her city to bring us our money?
14 We keep you (sg.) yourself in our memory.
15 He drives his own sheep from their field.

Exercise 2

As a review of the pronouns is, ea, id (Unit 21) and ipse, ipsa, ipsud (Unit 22), go back and translate all the non-underlined personal pronouns, emphatic pronouns and possessive adjectives in Exercise 1.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 Tū docēbās multōs nostrum.
2 Invēnit sē in nostrō templō.
3 Rēgīna dābit nōbīs poenam.
4 In iūcundīs litterīs scripserat poēta dē amōre vestrī.
5 Mea soror vīdit mē, sed ego ā meō frātre nōn vīsus est.
6 Adulēscēntēs nōn sē sed vōs potuerant audīre.
7 Vōs nōs semper iūbētis.
8 Nūntiāmus tibi verba rēgis istīus.
9 Ĉūr vocās mē et meam sorōrem?
10 Sōl sē in flūmine videt.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a personal or reflexive pronoun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1 tam grātum est mihi (Catullus)
2 nīl mihi tam valdē placeat (Catullus)
3 ut mihi quidem videantur dī immortālēs (Cicero Marc.)
4 vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulīte (Caesar Gal.)
5 vōs carmine compellābō tēque adeō (Catullus)
6 quae vōs fortūna quiētōs sollicitat (Vergil Aeneid)
7 isque domum nōbīs isque dedit dominae (Catullus)
8 quae nōbīs nōta sunt (Caesar Gal.)
9 iūra, lēgēs, agrōs libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt (Caesar Gal.)
10 fūgit mē ratio (Catullus)
11 tum hōc tempore propter tuum in mē amōrem (Cicero Fam.)
12 nōn illī ad mē venīre debuerint (Cicero Fam.)

(a) then at this time on account of your love for me
(b) and they ought not come to me
(c) so that the immortal gods seem to me
(d) I will address you with my song and approach you
(e) and he gave a house to us and he gave (it) to (his) mistress
(f) it is so pleasing to me
(g) which are known to us
(h) which fate disturbs you, who are peaceful
(i) an opportunity having been given, you must look out for yourselves
(j) may nothing please me so greatly
(k) they left (our) rights, laws, fields, (and) freedom to us
(l) reasoning fled me

Reading: The Battle with the Amazons (Labor IX), part 1


celeberrimum most famous adventūs of (his) arrival [gen. sg.]
UNIT 28
Imperative mood

**Background**

Latin possesses three verbal moods:

- **Indicative** – expresses a fact
- **Imperative** – expresses a command
- **Subjunctive** – expresses a variety of things including a wish, unreal situation, result, purpose

Up till now we have only dealt with the *indicative*. The *subjunctive* will be introduced in *Intensive Intermediate Latin*.

The English *imperative* is the base verbal form alone, with no subject expressed. Orthographically the sentence ends with an exclamation point. The negative consists of *do not* placed before the verbal base:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Be polite!</em></td>
<td><em>Do not be rude!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Go the store!</em></td>
<td><em>Do not go to the party!</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Buy lemonade!</em></td>
<td><em>Do not take candy from strangers!</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since you can really only give a command to someone you are speaking directly to, the imperative is confined to 2\(^{nd}\) person forms.

What are often considered 1\(^{st}\) and 3\(^{rd}\) person ‘imperatives’ consist of *let* + an object pronoun + the base verbal form:

- *Let us go!*
- *Let him come!*

Besides having only 2\(^{nd}\) person forms, the imperative is also confined to the *present*. This makes sense in that a past imperative is logically impossible since an imperative is giving direction towards a present or future activity.

In English the imperative possesses present and future meanings. The future tense itself may even be used with imperative force:

Imagine a parent scolding a child: *You WILL clean your room.*
**Latin structure**

Like English Latin forms present imperatives which are confined to the 2\textsuperscript{nd} person. 1\textsuperscript{st} and 3\textsuperscript{rd} person let forms are translated by the subjunctive (see *Intensive Intermediate Latin*).

Latin possesses both active and passive forms:

**Imperative active**

- 2\textsuperscript{nd} sg.
  - Drop the -\textit{re} of the infinitive and voilà, you’re done:

  | 1\textsuperscript{st} conj. | amāre | → | Amā! | Love! |
  | 2\textsuperscript{nd} conj. | docēre | → | Docē! | Teach! |
  | 3\textsuperscript{rd} conj. | agere | → | Age! | Drive, Lead! |
  | 3\textsuperscript{rd} conj.-\textit{iō} | capere | → | Capē! | Seize! |
  | 4\textsuperscript{th} conj. | scīre | → | Scī! | Know! |

Irregular forms (1)

The following three verbs do not end in the expected vowel:

- dīcere → Dīc! Say!
- dūcere → Dūc! Lead!
- facere → Fac! Do!

The following two verbs also do not end in a vowel, though this is not terribly surprising since their infinitives irregularly lack a vowel to begin with:

- esse → Es! Be!
- ferre → Fer! Carry!

- 2\textsuperscript{nd} pl.
  - Drop the -\textit{re} of the infinitive and add -\textit{te}
  - In 3\textsuperscript{rd} conjugation verbs convert the -\textit{e} to -\textit{i}-

  | 1\textsuperscript{st} conj. | amāre | → | Amāte | Love! |
  | 2\textsuperscript{nd} conj. | docēre | → | Docēte | Teach! |
  | 3\textsuperscript{rd} conj. | agere | → | Agite | Drive! |
  | 3\textsuperscript{rd} conj.-\textit{iō} | capere | → | Capite | Seize! |
  | 4\textsuperscript{th} conj. | scīre | → | Scīte | Know! |
Irregular forms (2)

Two verbs lack a vowel before the ending -te though again this is not surprising since there is no vowel present in their infinitives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>Este! Be!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>Ferte! Carry!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative passive**

- 2\(^{nd}\) sg.
  - This is identical to the infinitive!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amāre!</td>
<td>Be loved!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docēre!</td>
<td>Be taught!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agere!</td>
<td>Be driven!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capere!</td>
<td>Be seized!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scīre!</td>
<td>Be known!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 2\(^{nd}\) pl.
  - This is formed by:
    - dropping the -re from the infinitive, changing -e- to -i- in 3\(^{rd}\) conjugation verbs and
    - adding -minī

This form is identical to the 2\(^{nd}\) pl. present passive form (Unit 19).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>Amāminī Be loved!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docēre</td>
<td>Docēminī Be taught!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agere</td>
<td>Agiminī Be driven!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>Capiminī Be seized!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scīre</td>
<td>Scīminī Be known!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Negative imperative**

The negative is quite easily formed by:

- nōlī in the singular and nōlīte in the plural
- followed by the present active or passive infinitive (on the latter, see Intensive Intermediate Latin)

Nōlī amāre eum! Do not love him!
Nōlīte docēri! Do not be taught!
Advanced topics

The future imperative (also called the 2nd imperative) is a rare formation which expresses a future action whose fulfillment is mandated by prior agreements. Thus it is confined largely to legal documents and recipes. It has both 2nd and 3rd person forms, though 2nd pl. passive forms are lacking.

- Active
  - Add the following endings to the present stem, with the same vowel changes in the 3rd and 4th conjugations as occur in the present tense (Units 2, 3):

    | Singular | Plural |
    |----------|--------|
    | 2        | -tō   |
    | 3        | -tō   |
    | 2        | -tōte |
    | 3        | -ntō  |

- Passive
  - Add the following endings to the present stem, with the same vowel changes in the 3rd and 4th conjugations as occur in the present tense:

    | Singular | Plural |
    |----------|--------|
    | 2        | -tor  |
    | 3        | -tor  |
    | 2        | ---   |
    | 3        | -ntor |

Examples

**Active**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2sg.</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2pl.</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2sg.</td>
<td>amātō</td>
<td>amātō</td>
<td>amātōte</td>
<td>amantō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>docētō</td>
<td>docētō</td>
<td>docētōte</td>
<td>docentō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl.</td>
<td>agitō</td>
<td>agitō</td>
<td>agitōte</td>
<td>aguntō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>capitōte</td>
<td>capiuntō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>scītō</td>
<td>scītō</td>
<td>scītōte</td>
<td>sciuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2sg.</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2sg.</td>
<td>amātor</td>
<td>amātor</td>
<td>amantor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>docētor</td>
<td>docētor</td>
<td>docentor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>agitor</td>
<td>agitor</td>
<td>aguntor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>capitor</td>
<td>capitor</td>
<td>capiuntor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scītor</td>
<td>scītor</td>
<td>sciuntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note

• Note that a long vowel is shortened before the 3rd pl. endings -ntō and -ntor.

Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1. Ferte cibum huc!
2. Dic verba huius reginae regi!
3. Nolite timere deos!
4. Aperi minimi, portae!
5. Cave et es felix!
6. Tenete lupum ferum!
7. Regere sem!
8. Tegite solem arboribus!
9. Excitare corpus, quod etiam nunc defessus sum!
10. Vide saxa ingentia, quae de monte altcecidereunt!

Exercise 2

The following excerpts from two well-known Christmas carols provide ample examples of imperative. Translate the lines.

1. (a) Adeste fidelis!
   (b) Venite, venite in Bethlehem!
   (c) Natum videte regem angelorum!

2. (a) Veni, veni Emmanuel!
   (b) Captivum solvem Israel, qui gemit in exilio!
   (c) Gaudem, gaude Emmanuel!
   (d) Noctis depelle nebulas dirasque noctis tenebras!
   (e) Regna reclude caelica!
   (f) Fac iter tutum superum!
   (g) Et claude vias inferum!

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an imperative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1 quidquid habēs bonī malīque, dīc nōbīs  
(Catullus)
2 dīc sī quid vīs, nōn nocēbō  
(Plautus Am.)
3 immō age et ā prīmā dīc, hospes, origine  
nōbīs īnsideās  
(Vergil Aeneid)
4 sed dīcam vōbīs, vōs porrō dīcite multīs mīlibus  
(Catullus)
5 quō, dīcite, nautae, ūc ope pervēnī  
(Ovid Met.)
6 et mihi quae vōbīs dūdum dīxī dīcīte  
(Plautus Poen.)
7 sī mihi respondēre volēs haec dīcitō  
(Cicerō Vēr.)
8 dīcitō potius, quoniam habēs auctōrem idōneum  
(Cicerō Vēr.)
9 omnium prīmum salūtem dīcitō mātrī et patrī  
(Plautus Capt.)
10 et dīxit marī tacē ombūtēsce et cessāvit ventus  
(St Jerome Mark)
11 tacē et nōlī turbārī sānus  
(St Jerome Tobit)
12 tacē inquit ante hoc nōvī quam tū nāitus es  
(Phaedrus)

(a) first of all speak my greeting to (my) mother and father  
(b) no, rather do (it) and speak, guest, to us of the treacheries  
from the first beginning  
(c) whatever of good and bad you have, tell us!  
(d) say, sailors, by what power have I come here  
(e) speak whatever if you wish; I will not harm (you)  
(f) be silent, o sane one, and do not be disturbed  
(g) and tell me what I just now said to you  
(h) say rather, since you have a suitable authority  
(i) be silent, he says, I knew this before you were born  
(j) if you will wish to respond to me, tell (me) this  
(k) but I will say to you, speak (it) in turn to many thousands  
(l) and he said to the sea, ‘be silent, cease,’ and the wind stopped

Exercise 4

Return to the listed exercises in previous units and try to locate the following imperative forms which are ordered in the sequence in which they occur. One of the forms is an archaic form which does not fit the rules discussed in this unit. Can you find it?

- Unit 4, Exercise 5: 2nd pl. active, 2nd pl. active  
- Unit 5, Exercise 4: 2nd sg. active, 2nd pl. active  
- Unit 6, Exercise 4: 2nd sg. active  
- Unit 15, Exercise 5: 2nd sg. active  
- Unit 19, Exercise 5: 2nd pl. active, 2nd pl. active  
- Unit 20, Exercise 4: 2nd pl. active  
- Unit 27, Exercise 4: 2nd pl. active
Reading: The Battle with the Amazons (Labor IX), part 2

Quandō hoc audīvit, lūnō fōrman Amāzonum sumpsit ēasque contrā Graecōs excitābit. “Estis prūdentēs! Nōlīte hīs virīs crēdere! Ad vōs vēnērunt, quod rēgīnam vestram capere eamque in Graeciam sēcum dūcere volunt.”


Review of units 23–28

A. Translate the following.

1 we will go 3 I was preferring 5 he does not want  
2 they carry 4 it is carried 6 you (sg.) want  

B. Make the adjective sōlus, -a, -um agree with the following nouns. In some instances, there may be more than one answer.

1 nautārum 4 tempesta'tis 
2 filiābus 5 mīlītem 
3 templō 6 villae 

C. Translate the underlined relative pronouns into Latin.

1 The mother, whose child is playing, is working in the garden.  
2 I gave the money to the man, whom I met last week.  
3 Because of the children, whom I faintly remember, the school changed its curriculum.

D. Translate the following question words into Latin. Beware that some sentences in English do not require question words.

1 Why, when, and how is he coming?  
2 Do you think the storm will end soon?  
3 Which woman did you meet in the subway?  
4 How much money does he make?

E. Translate the following personal pronouns/adjectives into Latin.

1 I saw you (sg.). yesterday afternoon.  
2 Some of us want to go to your (sg.) father. 
3 We don’t like you (pl.)
F. Use the following verbs to translate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō, amāre</td>
<td>to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō, audīre</td>
<td>to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō, capere</td>
<td>to seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō, dūcere</td>
<td>to lead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1 | Love! (sg.)        |
| 2 | Be heard! (pl.)    |
| 3 | Do not be seized! (pl.) |
| 4 | Lead! (sg.)        |
UNIT 29
Vocative and locative

Background

The vocative is used to address someone directly:

*Boys*, come here!
*Tom*, what are you doing?

It is sometimes preceded by *O* in English:

*O my God*, what have I done?

The locative is used to express location, with no movement involved.

In English this is achieved via the prepositions *in, on, or at:*

*I am in the country.*
*You are on Crete.*
*He’s at the house.*

Latin structure

The vocative and locative are Latin’s two minor cases.

Unique forms exist only for a subset of nouns.

Vocative

It is identical to the nominative for all declensions except for the singular of 2nd declension masculine nouns which end in -us.

- Nouns ending in -us replace this with -e
  
  - *amīcus* → *amīce* friend
  - *dominus* → *domine* master
• Nouns endings in -ius replace this with -ī:

    filius → filī friend

• Exceptionally, the masculine form of the adjective meus, -a, -um is mī in the vocative sg.

    Mī filī, labōrā!  Mea filia, labōrā!
    My son, work!    My daughter, work!

• The word deus god does not have a vocative singular.

    Deus, auxilium mihi dā!
    God, give me aid!

**Locative**

The preposition in in, on is used to express location for most nouns in Latin.

    in Circō Maximō
    *in the Circus Maximus*

    in oppidō
    *in the town*

In the following five situations, however, a special locative case is used:

- names of towns
- names of cities
- names of small islands
- domus, -ūs (f.) home (for its declension, see Unit 36)
- rūs, rūris (nt.) country

The endings are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st declension:</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd declension:</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd declension:</td>
<td>-e ~ -ī</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domī</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūs</td>
<td>rūrī</td>
<td>rūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples:

1st declension

Rōma, -ae Rome  
Rōmae at Rome
Athēnai, -ārum Athens  
Athēnīs at Athens

2nd declension

Rhodus, -ī Rhodes (small island)  
Rhodī on Rhodes
Delphī, -ōrum Delphi  
Delphīs at Delphi

3rd declension

Carthāgō, Carthāginis (f.) Carthage  
Carthāgīnēs Carthage
Gādēs, Gādium (f.) Cadiz  
Gādibus at Cadiz

Notes

- Some place names are always plural: Athēnai, Delphī, Gādēs
- The locative plural is always identical to the ablative plural.
- The 1st and 2nd declension singulars are identical to genitive singulars.
- domus, -ūs is a 4th declension noun (Unit 36) with some 2nd declension forms, most notably domō (dat. sg.), domum (acc. sg.), and domōs (acc. pl.).

Advanced topics

Traces of locatives can occasionally be found in other simple nouns such as:

humī on the ground

domī militiaeque in peace and war  
[literally: at home and in service]  
[militia, -ae military service]
bellī domīque in peace and war  
[literally: in war and at home]  
[bellum, -ī war]

A noun which is in apposition with a noun in the locative is placed in the ablative.

Apposition is a further description of a noun, almost as an afterthought. It is usually set off by commas in English, as in the translation below:

Mīlitēs Albae cōnstitērunt in urbe opportūnā (Cicero Phil. IV 2.6)
The soldiers stopped at Alba, a suitable city.
Domī, however, is modified by the genitive of the possessive adjective

Domī suae senex est mortuus.
The old man died at his own house.

Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 Puer, ubi es tuus frāter?
2 Mīlitēs, venīte ad mē!
3 Serve mī, cūr nihil fēcistī?
4 Rūrī villa eius est.
5 Aedicābimus templum novum Rōmae.
6 Puellae, portāte mihi mītem cibum, quem volō.
7 Carthāgine potest vidēre multa sīdera, quae in caelīs fulgent.
8 Frātrēs, agite gregem ovium in nāvem!
9 Petimus auxilium belli domīque ā deā pulchrā.
10 Veniēmus ad servum deī, quī est Rhodī.
11 Aquilam, quae humī fuit, invēnimus.
12 Agrē lātī sunt nōbīs Athēnīs.
13 Socī, cūr mē nōn vīs?
14 Domī meae mānserant amīcī.
15 Dūcite barbarum in carcerem, virī!
16 Tange, filī, portam sacrī templī!
17 Poēta, scribe novum librum!
18 Audīte mē, animālia!
19 Frequēntia oppida inveniuntur Rhodī.
20 Mulier, ī mēcum perīculō ad illud antrum!

Exercise 2

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a vocative or locative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
29
Vocative and locative

1 fōrmam quidem ipsum, Marce fīlī, et tamquam faciem honestī vidēs

2 habēs ā patre mūnus, Marce fīlī, meā quidem sententiā magnum

3 officia dūcerentur ab honestāte, Marce fīlī, atque ab omni genere virtūtis

4 neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt

5 summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae

6 Rōmae diērum vī gintī suppliciātō redditur

7 adeō ut et pānis Rōmae saepe dēficeret

8 statuam eius Rōmae īnsignis aquila circumplexa

9 nōn soleō, mī Brūte, quod tibi nōtum esse arbitror

10 reliquī, quī domīmānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt

11 Rōmae diērum vī gintī suppliciātō redditur

12 mī Brūte, velim quam plūrimum tēcum habeās

(a) and not only at home but also among the neighbouring states
(b) a distinguished eagle surrounded his statue at Rome
(c) the duties are led by integrity, Marcus my son, and from every kind of virtue
(d) I am not in the habit, my Brutus, as I think it is known to you
(e) I would wish, my Brutus, that you may have (him) with you as much as possible
(f) because of which thing, I entreat you, my Brutus, with all my spirit
(g) you have, Marcus my son, from your father a gift – indeed a great one in my opinion
(h) the rest, who stayed at home, support themselves and those ones
(i) so that bread was often lacking at Rome
(j) thanksgiving of twenty days is rendered at Rome
(k) you see indeed the shape itself, Marcus my son, as if the face of goodness
(l) a young man born into the highest rank and at home of the highest power

Reading: Cacus Steals the Oxen (Labor X), part 1


Tiberim Tiber [acc.sg.] diēs days [nom. pl.] diē day [abl. sg. masc.]
UNIT 30
Uses of the accusative

Background
In addition to indicating the direct object and the object of certain prepositions (Unit 7), the accusative has a range of other more adverbial meanings.

Latin structure
I Accusative of duration of time
The accusative is used to express how long the event expressed by a verb lasts.
The preposition per through may be used.

Virīnī annōs ibi mānsit.
He remained there 20 years.

In villā eius multōs diēs vīvēmus.
We will live in his country house many days.

II Accusative of extent of space
The accusative expresses how long a physical distance is.

agrī viōnī pedēs lātī
fields 20 feet wide

puella septem passūs cucurrerat.
The girl had run seven paces.

III Accusative of limit of motion
The preposition ad + the accusative expresses the endpoint towards which someone or something is moving.
In the following five situations, however, the accusative alone without the aid of a preposition can express the limit of motion:

- names of towns
- names of cities
- names of small islands
- *domus, -ūs* (f.) *house*  (for its declension, see Unit 36)
- *rūs, rūris* (nt.) *country*

Note that these are the same five types of nouns which take special locative forms (Unit 29).

*Domum crās ēbimus.*
We will go home tomorrow.

*Quandō Athēnās venīs?*  *(Athēnae, -ārum Athens)*
When are you coming to Athens?

**IV Greek accusative**

A body part in the accusative can express where the description of an adjective or the action of a verb applies. This construction is largely confined to poetry and later Latin, and as the name suggests it is due to Greek influence.

In Classical prose it is usually replaced by the *ablative of respect* (Unit 8).

*Mīles oculūs vulnerātus est.*
The soldier has been wounded in the eyes.

*Nūdī pectora erant hominēs.*
The men were bare with respect to their chests.

**V Accusative of exclamation**

The accusative, modified by an adjective, occurs in exclamations.

*Cruďēlēs deōs!*
Cruel gods!

*Mē prosperum!*
Fortunate me!
VI Adverbial accusative

Certain neuter adjectives have become fossilized with certain adverbial meanings. The main such fossilized forms are:

- *aliquid* somewhat
- *multum* much
- *nihil* not at all
- *nihil* not at all
- *plērumque* generally
- *plūrimum* very greatly
- *quid* why?
- *tantum* only

*Nihil carmina rēgī canere possunt.*
They are not at all able to sing the songs for the king.

*Plērumque hīc sunt multae fēminae et suae puellae.*
Generally there are many women and their daughters here.

**Exercise 1**

Determine which type of accusative the underlined portions would be if translated into Latin.

1. O *unlucky you!* What will you do?
2. He *generally* sleeps all day.
3. How many *miles* did you walk last weekend?
4. They are going to *Philadelphia*.
5. The little boy trembles *at his lips* as he stands in front of the class.
6. It will take me *five years* to read all these books!
7. How long did it last?
8. She likes his cooking *somewhat*.
9. They sat down because they were tired *in their legs*.
10. Damn weather! We wanted a picnic today.
11. When do you think she will arrive *home*?
12. The trees in the forest are *70 feet* high.
13. He does not speak *much*.
14. Dried *with respect to her hands* she went back inside.
15. The fence encloses the yard of *8 square miles*.

**Exercise 2**

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an accusative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1 percussa novā mentem formīdīne (Vergil G.)
2 ego rūs ībō atque ibi manēbō (Terence Eu.)
3 est mēcum per diem tōtum (Pliny the Younger)
4 aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trāgintā
   altum pedēs octōgintā (Caesar Gal.)
5 trabēs distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs (Caesar Gal.)
6 sedet aeternumque sedēbit īnflēx (Vergil Aeneid)
7 ī miserās hominum mentēs (Lucretius)
8 mē caecum quī haec ante nōn vīderim (Cicero Att.)
9 maximam partem lacte et pecore vīvunt (Caesar Gal.)
10 Rōmam ad senātum profectus (Caesar Gal.)
11 Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum (Caesar Gal.)
12 Rōmam praetrepidus rediit (Suetonius Nero)

(a) a rampart 330 feet wide, 80 feet high
(b) he, unhappy, sits there and will sit there forever
(c) he went to Rome to the senate to demand aid
(d) he returned very nervous to Rome
(e) o wretched minds of men
(f) I, blind, who had not seen these things before
(g) struck by a new terror in the mind
(h) beams being apart from each other by two feet each
(i) for the most part they live on milk and cattle
(j) he set out to Rome to the senate
(k) he is with me the entire day
(l) I will go to the country and will stay there

Reading: Cacus Steals the Oxen (Labor X), part 2

Quandō relinquere cōnsūtīt, ūnus ex bōbus suīs mūgīre coepit. Subītō quattuor
in antrō inclusī mūgitum reddidērunt. Sīc Herculēs locum, quō quattuor bovēs
cēlābantur, scīvit. Ille vehementer īrātus ad antrum cucurrit. At intrāre nōn potuit,
quod saxum ingēns ā Cācō in introitū posītum erat. “Quid facere dēbeō?” sē
interrogāvit. Breve tempus magnā vī saxum āmōvit. Quod antrum fūmō replētum
est, Herculēs Cācum vidēre nōn potuit. In antrum ergō irruit et collum mōnstrī
corripuit. Ille sē nūllō modō līberāre potuit atque mox mortuus in terram cecidit.

introitū entrance [abl. sg.]
UNIT 31
Indefinite pronouns

Background

An *indefinite pronoun* refers to a non-specific entity. The following are examples of indefinite pronouns:

- *Someone* is walking across the street.
- *No one* likes that movie.
- *He doesn’t like anything.*
- *A certain one* is coming.
- *Whoever* comes down the street, we’ll see her.
- *Each one* is coming this evening.

The adjectival correlates of the pronouns above simply have a noun immediately following them. They are:

- *Some* man is walking across the street.
- *No student* likes that movie.
- *He doesn’t like any film.*
- *A certain professor* is coming.
- *Whichever lady* comes down the street, we’ll see her.
- *Each student* is coming this evening.
Latin structure

The indefinite pronouns of Latin are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc/Fem.</th>
<th>Nt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam</td>
<td>quidquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc./Fem.</th>
<th>Nt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quīdam/quaedam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quicumque/quaecumque</td>
<td>quidcumque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- These translate as *someone, anyone, each (one), a certain (one), and whoever* in the masculine and feminine.
- They translate as *something, anything, each (thing), a certain (thing) and whatever* in the neuter.
- *quisque, quidque* primarily means *each*, with *everyone, everything* being translated by *omnis, omne*.

Aliquis, quisquam, quisque

The first group of three pronouns, *aliquis, quisquam, quisque*, is built using the interrogative pronoun *quis, quid* (Unit 26).

There is no gender distinction between the masculine and feminine.

Only the *quis, quid* element is declined. Since these are indefinites and the exact identity and number of people involved are unknown, singular forms alone occur. Observe the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>someone</th>
<th>something</th>
<th>anyone</th>
<th>anything</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
<td>quisquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>cuiusquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>cuquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquem</td>
<td>aliquid</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquō</td>
<td>aliquō</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>each one</th>
<th>each thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quisque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuiusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

Aliquis aliquem videt.
Someone sees someone.

Aliquid ab aliquō vidēbātur.
Something was being seen by someone.

Quidque amō!
I love each thing!

Quisque alicui crēditīt.
Each one believed something/someone.

Vix quidquam vīdī.
I hardly saw anything.

Apparent plural forms of quisque such as quōsque in the following are actually the relative pronoun, here quōs, plus the enclitic -que and.

quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā . . . recēpērunt (Caesar Gal.)
to whom they gave fields and whom they afterwards received

Quīdam, quīcumque

The remaining two indefinites, quīdam and quīcumque, are derived from the relative pronoun (Unit 25) and as such they have a three-way gender contrast.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>certain</td>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quandam</td>
<td>quandam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quōdam</td>
<td>quōdam</td>
<td>quōdam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

whoever, whatever

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quīcumque</td>
<td>quaecumque</td>
<td>quidcumque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cuiuscumque</td>
<td>cuiuscumque</td>
<td>cuiuscumque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cuicumque</td>
<td>cuicumque</td>
<td>cuicumque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quemcumque</td>
<td>quamcumque</td>
<td>quidcumque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quōcumque</td>
<td>quācumque</td>
<td>quōcumque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

- Note the occurrence of *quid-* and not *quod* (as in the relative pronoun) in the neuter nom. and acc. sg. of both forms.
- In *quīdam* note as well *quen-* and *quan-* in the accusative instead of expected *quem* and *quam*.
  - This change of -m- to -n- happens for expected phonetic reasons; specifically, the -m- changes its place of articulation (lips) to agree with that of the following -d- (behind upper front teeth). The same phenomenon was seen in certain forms of *īdem, eadem, idem same* in Unit 22.

Examples

*Quīcumque hodiē advenit, fēlīx erit.*
Whoever comes today, will be happy.

*Quaedam fēlīx est.*
A certain (woman) is happy.

Finally, *nobody, nothing* is expressed via:

- the nouns

  *nēmō, nēminis* (m./f.) no one
  *nihil* nothing
  *nil* nothing

*Nihil* and *nil* are indeclinable; that is, they never change their form regardless of what case they should be in.

Occasionally the dative/ablative form *nihilō* is seen:

*Utrum nescīs quam altē ascenderis, an prō nihilō id putās?*  
(Cicero *Fam.*)  
Do you not know how high you rose, or do you think it for nothing?

Outside of the nominative and the accusative, Classical Latin prefers using forms of *nūllus* (see Unit 24) to express *no one*, making the paradigm:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nēmō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nūllius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nūlli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nēminem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nūllō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced topics

Aliquis, aliquid loses its ali- when it follows sī if, nisi if not, num whether, or nē not.

Sī, nisi, nē will be encountered in Intensive Intermediate Latin.

Nōn videō num quis adveniat.
I do not see whether someone is coming.

Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 Quidcumque vidēs, nōlī timēre!
2 Aliquis mihi aliquid dedit, sed nōn sciō quem.
3 Cuique est aliquis, quī eum amat.
4 Nēminī pecūnia fuit. Rēgīna sōla dīves erat.
5 Nīhil bibī. Bibam quidquām.
6 Illī currunt ā quōque.
7 Quaecumque istem hominem videt, ea scīt eum deum esse.
8 Mittō cuquam nihil, quod quīdam meam pecūniam invēnit.
9 Villae Carthāgīne ab lūnā sunt iactae in lūcem, quod nūlla nūbēs in cælō erat. Quisque erat caccus.
10 Sciō nēminem, quī hēc vīvit.
11 Quidque terret meum amīcum.
12 Ab aliquō territus est meus amīcus.
13 Dīvidite quidque et date cuique aliquid!
14 Cavē canem! Cavē animālia omnia! Cavē quidque!
15 Aliquis mihi litterās scripsit. Quīcumque ēās scripsit, ille auctor bonus est.
16 Quandō inimīcī nōs pugnānt, nēmō valet.
17 Ĉūr nīl tū facis? Dēbēs aliquid nōbēs facere.
18 Quandō venet quaedam, quae ā barbarīs captā erat?
19 Quis hoc fēcit? Rogābimus quendam, quī hēc erat.
20 Quidcumque, quod noxae est, interficere possumus.

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Someone closed that gate.
2 We were not able to decide anything.
3 Kill (pl.) whatever you see!
4 Someone fell from the high tree.
5 A certain (woman) remembers me.
6 When she touches anything, each thing turns into gold.
7 The king divided the wolf for each.
8 Whatever makes wine good, we ought to learn.
9 No one had fed the animals.
10 He saw nothing, when he stood here with me.

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an indefinite pronoun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 quod nōn alicui venustum esse videātur (Cicero Fam.)
2 quod nōn alicui prōmissum iam sit (Cicero Phil.)
3 alicui quī tē ignōret vērum esse videātur (Cicero Ver.)
4 quōscumque adīt ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit (Caesar Gal.)
5 quōscumque velīs adiungere ad amīcitiam (Q. Tullius Cicero)
6 sed eōrum ad quōscumque illusionis morte vēnissent (Cicero Ver.)
7 sī quidquam ab hīs praesidiī spērent (Caesar Gal.)
8 tamquam ad rem attineat quidquam (Horace S.)
9 neque senātūī quidquam manēre (Tacitus Ann.)
10 trium mēnsum molītā cibāria sibi quemque domō effērre iubent (Caesar Gal.)
11 sua quemque fraus et suus terror maximē vexat (Cicero S. Rosc.)
12 nōminē quemque vocāns (Vergil Aeneid)

(a) they ordered each to carry out of the home for themselves ground provisions of three months
(b) as if anything may pertain to the thing
(c) whomever you wish to attach to friendship
(d) but theirs to whomever they had come because of that one’s death
(e) he brings to his own opinion whomever he approaches from the state
(f) and not anything remains to the senate
(g) his own deceit and his own fright especially troubles each
(h) if they should hope for anything of support from them
(i) that it not seem to be charming to someone
(j) calling each by name
(k) it may seem to be true to someone who is not acquainted with you
(l) which has not already been promised to someone
Reading: The Golden Apples of Hesperides (Labor XI), part 1


“Amīce,” respondit senex, “vērum est Hesperidēs filiās meās esse. Ego sōlus mortālis sum quī locum hortī nōvit. Libenter tē iuvābō, sī prō mē Terram tenēbis.”
UNIT 32
Indefinite adjectives

Background

The last unit introduced *indefinite pronouns*. This unit deals with their close relatives: *indefinite adjectives*.

The following are examples of indefinite pronouns:

*Someone* is walking across the street.
*No one* likes that movie.
*He doesn’t like anything.*
*A certain one* is coming.
*Whoever* comes down the street, we’ll see her.
*Each one* is coming this evening.

The adjectival correlates of the pronouns above are:

*Some* man is walking across the street.
*No student* likes that movie.
*He doesn’t like any film.*
*A certain professor* is coming.
*Whichever* lady comes down the street, we’ll see her.
*Each student* is coming this evening.
Latin structure

The indefinite adjectives of Latin are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliquod</td>
<td>some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quodque</td>
<td>each, every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
<td>quoddam</td>
<td>a certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīcumque</td>
<td>quaecumque</td>
<td>quodcumque</td>
<td>whichever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūllus</td>
<td>ūlla</td>
<td>ūllum</td>
<td>any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūllus</td>
<td>nūlla</td>
<td>nūllum</td>
<td>no, none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ūllus and nūllus are pronominal adjectives which were introduced in Unit 24. They are declined like 1st–2nd declension adjectives aside from their genitive singulars (ūllus, nūllus) and dative singulars (ūlli, nūlli).

The remaining four indefinite adjectives are all declined similarly.

- **aliquī** and **quīdam** illustrate:

```
some
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alicuem</td>
<td>alicuem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliqūō</td>
<td>aliqūā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliquae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliquōrum</td>
<td>alicuārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliqūōs</td>
<td>aliqūās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
<td>aliqūibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

Aliquī, quīque, quīdam, quīcumque all contain the relative pronoun quī, quaē, quod (Unit 25) and are declined identically to it with the following two slight modifications:

- In aliquī, -qua occurs in place of expected -quaē in:
  - fem. nominative sg.: aliqua
  - nt. nominative and accusative pl.: aliqua
- In quīdam an expected -m- becomes -n-
  - accusative sg.: quendam, quandam
  - genitive pl.: quīrundam, quārundam

Examples

Aliquī virī aliquem ferum canem interfēcērunt.
Some men killed some wild dog.

Quaeque fēmina oppidae hīc est.
Each woman of the town is here.

Quīcumque hominēs ā mē videntur, eīs pecūniam dō.
Whichever men are seen by me, I give them money.
Exercise 1

Translate the underlined words. Latin words whose genders are not apparent from the English translation are included in parentheses.

1 Some farmers never find anything for themselves.
2 Do you (sg.) know a certain woman, who lives here by herself? [porta, -ae door]
3 Whichever door you (pl.) find, open it! [castra, -orum camp]
4 Did you (pl.) see any camps?
5 We ought to praise each ally, who risked their own lives to save us.
6 Ride no horse without asking me first. [equus, -i horse]
7 The world was made by certain gods, who fight with each other.
8 They set sail for some island. [insula, -ae island]
9 Be happy with whichever gift he will give you (sg.). [dōnum, -i gift]
10 The wolf was killed by some arrow of some soldier. [sagitta, -ae arrow]

Exercise 2

Go back to Exercise 1 and translate all the pronouns.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 Quaedam tempestās veniet.
2 Scītisne ūlla perīcula, quae inimīcī nōbīs facient?
3 Quodque saxum dē monte aliquō cecidit.
4 Apertus erat quaedam porta ab servō īnfēlicī.
5 Senēs nōn cupiunt ūllum somnium immortāle.
6 Commūnia verba audiēbantur in aliqū urbe.
7 Nōn mihi sunt ūlli honōrēs.
8 Alicuīs fēminaē puer cucurrit ab templō sacrō.
9 Quodcumque vīnum bibēs, id etiam bibam.
10 Utrum præmiūm ēī ferēs an eum in aliqū antrum tenebrārum dūcēs?
11 Nōlīte flēre! Est nūlla noxa.
12 Quaeque scelerā grāvia ūlli fēcērunt, dēbēmus nōn timēre.
13 Rēx cuiusque urbē rēgit cum laetitiā.
14 Quibusdam antīquīs nōn crēdimus.
15 Aliqū miser meum dextrum bracchium frēgerit.
16 Manēre hīc nōn vult, quod nōn habet ūllam fortūnam bonam.
17 Mittītisne ēīs quæcumque taurum, quī ā vōbīs captus erat?
Indefinite adjectives

18 Quīdam fīnītīmī suōs gladiōs vendunt, quod nūlla pugna est.
19 Quīque cīvis cuiusque urbis hunc librum auctōris illīūs legere dēbet.
20 Quandō aliqūī militēs nōs servābunt?

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an indefinite adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus
   premī vidēbātur  (Caesar Gal.)
2 quaecumque fortūna eius fuerit  (Cicero Att.)
3 quaecumque morā fluidōque calōre corpora tābēscunt  (Ovid Met.)
4 quōsoque gregēs pecorum, quae sēcūm armenta trahēbat  (Ovid Met.)
5 et rōbustissimōs quōsoque in exercitū  (St Jerome)
6 sed persequimīnī hostēs et extrēmōs quōsoque
   fugientium caedite  (St Jerome)
7 quendam mūnicipem meum dē tuō volō ponte īre  (Catullus)
8 sed audiō mālōrem quendam in urbe tīmōrem esse  (Cicero Att.)
9 intellegimus in istīs subscripūnibus ventum
   quendam popularēm esse quaesītum  (Cicero Clu.)
10 cum est īsus atque aliqūod bellum incidit  (Caesar Gal.)
11 adferet aliqūod scelerāttī hominis exemplum  (Cicero Phil.)
12 ut sī in circō aut theātrō ludicrum aliqūod postulārent  (Tacitus Hist.)

(a) each herd of cattle which, the cattle, he was taking with himself
(b) as if they might demand something playful in the racecourse
   or in the theatre
(c) whichever bodies decay in time by means of such flowing heat
(d) I want a certain citizen of mine to go from your bridge
(e) whichever fortune might be his
(f) but pursue the enemies and kill every last of them fleeing
(g) and whichever part of the camp, bare with respect to defenders,
   seemed to be pressed
(h) we understand that in those notes of censors a certain popular
   wind was sought
(i) but I hear there is a certain greater fear in the city
(j) when there is use and some war occurs
(k) and every strongest one in the army
(l) he will present some example of a wicked man
Hoc audīvit Herculēs et magnō gaudīō affectus est. Nōn frūstrā ad extrēmam partem mundī vēnerat.


**vultū** face [abl. sg.]
UNIT 33
Participles

Background

A participle is a verbal adjective. That is, it is a verb that is used as an adjective. Below, each participle is modifying a noun (man, dog) just as adjectives do.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>participle</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walking</td>
<td>the walking man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark</td>
<td>barking</td>
<td>the barking dog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English possesses several participles beyond the present active in -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>having loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>going to love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- note that in all of these, -ing indicates that we are dealing with a participle
- a form of the verb be indicates the participle is passive
- a form of have indicates the participle is past

Since participles are still verbal, they may take modifying adverbs and prepositional phrases as well as direct objects.

A participial phrase is the group of words which are directly concerned with the participle:

*The dog, having been loved by us, had to be given away.*

Here, the participle having been loved is modified by the prepositional phrase by us. The two together form a participial phrase.

*The dog, having bitten the mailman, went back inside.*

Here, the participle having bitten takes the direct object the mailman. Together they constitute a participial phrase.
English participles are often usurped by various types of subordinate clauses introduced by certain subordinating conjunctions which themselves add to the meaning:

- *The dog, which was loved by us, had to be given away.* (relative clause)
- *The dog, although it was loved by us, had to be given away.* (concessive clause)
- *The dog, which had bitten the mailman, went back inside.* (relative clause)
- *The dog, when it had bitten the mailman, went back inside.* (temporal clause)

**Latin structure**

Latin is simpler than English in that – for whatever reason – it only has *four participles.*

There is neither a *present passive* nor a *perfect active.*

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** to love

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amātūrus amandus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The future passive participle is known as the *gerundive* and will be discussed in *Intensive Intermediate Latin.*

**Present participle**

- To form the present active participle drop *-re* from the infinitive
- Convert the stem to the stem used in the imperfect
- Add the ending *-ns*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present Active</th>
<th>Imperfect Active</th>
<th>Present Passive</th>
<th>Imperfect Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>→ amā-</td>
<td>→ amāns</td>
<td>love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>→ vidē-</td>
<td>→ vidēns</td>
<td>see</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>→ dūce-</td>
<td>→ dūcē-</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere (capiō)</td>
<td>→ cape-</td>
<td>→ capiē-</td>
<td>seize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīre</td>
<td>→ audī</td>
<td>→ audiē-</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Since participles are verbal adjectives they will be declined for number, case, and gender. They are declined like 3rd declension adjectives of 1 termination (Unit 17).

Note the stem ends in -nt- which shortens the long vowel of the nom. sg.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc/Fem.</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. amante</td>
<td>amante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ amantī</td>
<td>~ amantī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The ablative in -ī is used when the participle is directly modifying a noun.
- The ablative in -e is used when the participle is substantive (i.e. acting as a noun)

Līberī ab amantī mātre spectantur.
The children are being watched by the loving mother.

Līberī ab amante spectantur.
The children are being watched by the loving (one).

The present participle does not indicate an action occurring in the present. Rather, it indicates an action which is occurring or occurred at the same time as that of the main verb. So in the following, the mother was loving at the same time as the seeing:

Līberī ab amantī mātre vīši sunt.
The children were seen by the loving mother.

**Perfect participle**

Its formation is easy. It is simply the fourth principal part:

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus loved
videō, vidēre, vīdi, vīsus seen
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dūctus led
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus seized
audio, audīre, audīvī, audītus heard
- This participle is only passive in meaning.
- It is a 1st–2nd declension adjective (Unit 6).
- It is used to describe a situation which occurred prior to that of the main verb.

\textbf{Canis territus ex antrō cucurrit.}

The (having been) frightened dog ran out of the cave.

- The act of becoming frightened occurred prior to the running.

\textbf{Canis territus ex antrō currit.}

The dog, (having been) frightened, runs out of the cave.

\textbf{Future active participle}

This is formed by replacing the -\textit{us} of the fourth principal part with -\textit{ūrus}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{amātus} → \textit{amātūrus} going to love
  \item \textit{visus} → \textit{visūrus} going to see
  \item \textit{ductus} → \textit{ductūrus} going to lead
  \item \textit{captus} → \textit{captūrus} going to seize
  \item \textit{auditus} → \textit{auditūrus} going to hear
\end{itemize}

- This participle is a 1st–2nd declension adjective (Unit 6).
- It expresses an action which occurs subsequent to that of the main verb.

\textbf{Vir itūrus līberōs vīdit.}

The man, about to go, saw his children.

\textbf{Vir itūrus līberōs spectat.}

The man, about to go, sees his children.

\textbf{Uses of the participles}

As mentioned in the background section of this unit, English participles are often replaced by various types of subordinate clauses introduced by a litany of various subordinating conjunctions (e.g. since, because, although, if, when).
Participles

The Latin participles may be translated in English in any one of these possible ways. Context will determine which is the most appropriate translation and specifically which English subordinating conjunction should be inserted.

Militēs pugnantēs oppidum discessērunt.
The fighting soldiers left the town.
The soldiers, who were fighting, left the town.
Although the soldiers were fighting, they left the town.
Since the soldiers were fighting, they left the town.
Because the soldiers were fighting, they left the town.
When the soldiers were fighting, they left the town.
If the soldiers were fighting, they left the town.

At the beginning stage, however, the most conservative approach is to simply translate the participles literally as English participles as in the first option above.

Exercise 1

Classify the following participles by tense, voice, gender, number, and case. Some words may have more than one possibility.

1 cernentēs 6 tentūrae
2 vocātī 7 interfectā
3 imperātūrum 8 flente
4 cupītōrum 9 missam
5 pāstō 10 nocentem

Which form above cannot be used with a noun? What would need to happen for it to occur with a noun?

Exercise 2

Link up each participle on the left with a noun on the right with which it agrees. Use each noun only once.

1 amātūrō virī [virī, virī man]
2 mānsā ovem [ōvis, ovis (f.) sheep]
3 trāctum tempestātēs [tempestās, tempestātis (f.) storm]
4 iactōrum nāvī [nāvis, nāvis (f.) ship]
5 flentēs sīdera [sīdus, sīderis (nt.) star, constellation]
6 ventae caput [caput, capitis (nt.) head]
Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1. Quis bibēns vīnum nihil nōbīs portāvit?
2. Virum filiam suam tenentem videō.
3. Tempestās ventūra terret nōs.
4. Deus ā cīvibus laudātus omnia eōs dabit.
5. Portam moenium claudentēs ibi mīlitēs stēterant.
6. Ramō frāctō interfectus est clārus poēta.
7. Verba audīta auctor scribet.
8. Amīcus rīdēns incipiet hoc opus.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a participle. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. ā quō numquam mē cōnsule dormientēs opprimēminī (Cicero Mur.)
2. et vēnit at invēnit eōs dormientēs (St Jerome)
3. maribus animīs et vīribus alacribus dormientēs aggrēdiāmur (Apuleius Met.)
4. captae superāvimus urbī (Vergil Aeneid)
5. urbī utī captae căsum convulsaque vīdit līmina tēctōrum (Vergil Aeneid)
6. in prīmō tumultū captae urbīs (Livy)
7. ita dēsum firmiter ac diūtissimē imperātūrum (Suetonius Vit.)
8. flēns animal cēterīs imperātūrum (Pliny the Elder)
9. cum comperisset imperātūrum eum vērum in senectā (Suetonius Gal.)
10. ultrōque vocant venientia fāta (Ovid Met.)
11. et quaecumque procul venientia lintea vīdī (Ovid Ep.)
12. prōspexit venientia vēla (Ovid Tr.)
(a) and they voluntarily call the coming fates
(b) that we may attack them, sleeping, with our masculine
courage and ready strength
(c) when he had learned that he would be commanding,
to be sure, in old age
(d) she watched the coming sails
(e) we outlived our captured city
(f) as he saw the misfortune of his captured city and
the shattered doorways of homes
(g) and whatever sails I saw coming at a distance
(h) the animal, weeping, about to command the others
(i) and he came and found them sleeping
(j) so at last, him, going to rule firmly and for a very long time
(k) in the first confusion of the captured city
(l) with me as consul you, sleeping, will never be
overwhelmed by that

Reading: Bringing Cerberus out of the Underworld (Labor XII),
part 1

Postquam pōma aurea ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modo ē duodecim
labōribus relinquentūr. Rēx Herculem magnopere timēbat. Propereā eum in
locum periculōsum mittere volēbat. Erat locus unde numquam redīre poterit.
Eī imperāvit canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Hoc opus tam difficile
Prīmum ad rīpam flūminis Stygis vēnit, quō rēgnun Plūtōnis continēbat. Hoc
trānsīre necesse erat. Erat nūllus pōns in hoc flūmine. Umbrae mortuōrum ā
Charonte ad rīpam ulteriōrem nāve trāductae sunt. Hic senex ab Hercule adeō
territus est. Herculeā nūllō modō trādūcere volēbat. At Herculeās eum hoc
fācere coēgit.
UNIT 34

Ablative absolute

Background

There are two general types of clauses in both English and Latin: main clauses and subordinate clauses.

Both types of clauses have at the very least a subject and a verb. They differ structurally in that:

- a main clause can stand alone as a complete sentence.
  
  Bill bought a cat.

- a subordinate clause cannot stand alone as a complete sentence. It serves as a modifier of the main clause, either further describing a particular noun mentioned in it, qualifying in what ways the main clause is true, or providing background context.

  Since Bill bought a cat, he needs to buy cat food once a week.

Relative clauses (Unit 25) are one type of subordinate clause.

The cat, which Bill bought, is cute.

In English most subordinate clauses are introduced by a subordinating conjunction such as: since, because, when, after, although, despite, that.

Bill is happy, when he’s brushing his new cat.

Although Bill had little money, he bought a cat.

I think that Bill bought a cat.

English does allow a participial phrase to serve as a clause despite not having a subordinating conjunction to introduce it.

Seeing the cat in the store, Bill went in and bought it.
When the noun doing the action of the participle is also in the participial phrase, a nominative absolute is produced.

**Bill seeing the cat in the store, the owner gave him a good deal.**

The presence of Bill in the participial phrase makes this an absolute construction.

**Latin structure**

Latin has a plethora of different types of subordinate clauses, most of which will be presented in *Intensive Intermediate Latin*. A key step in improving one’s confidence in reading Latin is conquering its various subordinate clause types.

Latin, again like English, also has an absolute construction which is not introduced by a subordinating conjunction. It consists of a noun or pronoun in the ablative accompanied by an agreeing participle. Unsurprisingly this construction is termed an ablative absolute.

Any of Latin’s four participles may be used (see the previous unit for discussion) but it is primarily confined to the present participle and perfect participle.

The only limit on the construction is that the ablative noun or pronoun may not be the subject or object of the main clause.

_Militibus pugnantibus, civēs oppidī fūgērunt._

The soldiers fighting, the citizens of the town fled.

Recall that the present participle indicates that the action of the participle occurs at the same time as that of the main verb and not necessarily in the present time.

In translating Latin ablative absolutes, any one of the following subordinate conjunctions may be inserted depending on the context: since, because, when, if, although.

*Since the soldiers were fighting, the citizens of the town fled.*
*Because the soldiers were fighting, the citizens of the town fled.*
*When the soldiers were fighting, the citizens of the town fled.*
*If the soldiers were fighting, the citizens of the town fled.*
*Although the soldiers were fighting, the citizens of the town fled.*

The past participle indicates that the action took place prior to that of the main verb.

_Oppidō incēnsō, cīvēs fūgērunt._

The town had burned down, the citizens fled.

Since the town burned down, the citizens fled.

Although the town burned down, the citizens fled.

etc.
Notes

1 Being verbal, participles can take direct objects and can be modified by adverbs or various types of adverbial phrases.

*Militibus ácriter inimícös pugnantibus, cívēs oppidī fūgērunt.*
The soldiers fiercely fighting the enemies, the citizens of the town fled.
Since the soldiers were fiercely fighting the enemies, the citizens of the town fled.

*Oppidō ab inimícīs incēnsō, cívēs fūgērunt.*
The town having been burned down by the enemies, the citizens fled.
Since the town had been burned down by the enemies, the citizens fled.

2 Since the verb *sum* has no present participle, it may be understood when two ablative nouns or an ablative noun and adjective come together.

*Rēge salvō, cívēs patriae fuērunt fēlicissīmī.*
The king being safe, the citizens of the country were very happy.
Since the king was safe, the citizens of the country were very happy.

3 The present participle uses its ablative form in -e when in an ablative absolute and not its alternative form in -ī.

*Populō senātōribus crēdente, patria bellum geret.*
The people believing the senators, the country will wage war.
Since the people believe the senators, the country will wage war.

4 Since Latin does not possess a past active participle, clauses that are active in English must be reworded as a passive when translating into a Latin ablative absolute.

Since the soldiers had destroyed the city, the citizens fled.
Since the city had been destroyed by the soldiers, the citizens fled.

*Urbe à militibus dēlētā, cívēs fūgērunt.*

- Deponent verbs though, having passive forms with active meanings, are capable of forming ablative absolutes with a past active meaning (*Intensive Intermediate Latin*).

*Senātōre fātō, populus audīvit.*
When the senator spoke, the people listened.
Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1 Verbīs poētæ audītīs, puerī fēlīcēs erant.
2 Tempestatē grave, nāvis ad ïnsulam portāta est.
3 Rēgīnā perīculum videntе, mūlitēs templum eius dēlēvērunt.
4 Saxīs nōn parvīs, moenīa hodiē aedificantur.
5 Eō flente, erat nihil, quod potuerāmus facere.
6 Librō populō scīptō, omnēs nōbilēs auctōrem laudant.
7 Tempōre brevī, in pāce vīvere dēbētīs.
8 Ignōtīs currentibus, perīculum lupōrum nūntiātur.
9 Inimīcīs suō cum rēge per viās terrae euntīs, populī oppidōrum urbiumque tacērunt.
10 Mē valente, puerī meī nōn timent tenebrās.
11 Aliquis ad āram templī nōs dūcet, auxiliō dē deīs petītō.
12 Praedā istīus agricolae inventā, agrī tibi erunt.
13 Crēdimus quibuscumque rēx nōbīs dīcit, nostrō oppidō pulchrō et nōn frequentī.
14 Negōtiō factō, nune domī sumus.
15 Libērīs ab leōne fugientibus, pedēs in pāce noctis audītae erant.
16 Nūllē lūce in carcere, nēminem videre poterit.
17 Quid agētur, dīgnīs filīs patriae interfectīs?
18 Eīs vīnum bonum bīentibus, omnēs in somnum cecidērunt.
19 Mīlītibus castra mūnientibus, servābimur.
20 Multā optō annō novō inceptō.

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Since the gate was opened, the soldiers came into the country house.
2 When will you (pl.) go to that wretched town, although no one lives there?
3 When the food was prepared by her mother, the brothers were carrying branches.
4 While the fire is strong, they sleep.
5 Because the inhabitants of the island were killed by arrows, there is no one who can save the animals.
6 His name being bad, no one says anything to him.
7 While the sheep were standing in the countryside, black clouds filled the sky.
8 Because our fatherland is beautiful, many men want to come here.
9 A cruel ambush having been commanded, the legion did not want to remain near the enemies.
10 Although the smell of blood is sensed, the parents do not leave the garden.

Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an ablative absolute. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 rēgnō occupātō (Caesar Gal.)
2 diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis (Caesar Gal.)
3 omnibus rēbus ad profectionem comparātīs (Caesar Gal.)
4 eō opere perfectō (Caesar Gal.)
5 sē invītō (Caesar Gal.)
6 ratibusque complūribus factīs (Caesar Gal.)
7 locīs superiōribus occupātīs (Caesar Gal.)
8 omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs (Caesar Gal.)
9 hoc proeliō factō (Caesar Gal.)
10 pluribus praesentibus (Caesar Gal.)
11 rūrsus nūlō veniente (Ovid Met.)
12 aquilā veniente (Vergil Ecl.)
13 magnō veniente fragōre (Vergil Aeneid)
14 veniente diē (Vergil G.)
15 veniente columbā (Lucretius)

(a) the kingdom having been seized
(b) all the fortunes of the allies having been spent
(c) many being present
(d) with day coming
(e) a day having been established for the sake of speaking
(f) an eagle coming
(g) all things for a departure having been purchased
(h) a great coming crash
(i) several rafts having been made
(j) his being unwilling
(k) a coming dove
(l) this task having been completed
(m) this battle having been made
(n) no one coming again
(o) higher ground having been seized
**Reading: Bringing Cerberus out of the Underworld (Labor XII), part 2**

Review of units 29–34

A. Provide the locative for the following words.

1 Rōma, -ae  2 Carthāgō, Carthāginis  3 domus, -ūs

B. Provide the vocative for the following nominatives. Keep the number constant.

1 filīī  2 rēx  3 deus  4 socius

C. Which types of accusative would the underlined phrases be rendered into Latin as?

1 He walked five miles after waiting at home for five hours.
2 They had bitten him at his nose.
3 Great Zeus, why do you do such a thing?

D. Rewrite the following Latin sentences replacing every noun with the correct form of the indefinite pronoun aliquis, aliquid. If a noun is plural, then render it singular. Then, go back and add the indefinite adjective aliquī, aliqua, aliquod as a modifier of each noun.

1 Puer mātrem amat.  3 Sagittīs virum interficiam.
2 Poēta rēginae litterās mittit.  4 Rēgī līberī sunt.

E. Use the following verbs to translate the italicized participles.

amō, amāre to love      capiō, capere to seize
audiō, audīre to hear    dūcō, dūcere to lead

1 I saw the loving mother.
2 I could not believe the words (verbūm, -āri), heard by me.
3 He gave money to the boy, who was about to lead the donkey to town.
4 Have you visited the towns (oppidum, -āri), seized by the enemies?
F. Translate the following as Latin ablative absolutes.

1. after the man was heard
2. since the young men were building the camp
3. the cave having been seen because of the flames
UNIT 35
Verbs that take the dative

Background

It has already been seen that the accusative case is used for direct objects and the dative case for indirect objects.

While being largely true this is not, however, a watertight statement. There are specific verbs which mandate that their object always be in the dative case. There are two such classes of verbs:

- Intransitive verbs
- Prefixed verbs

Intransitive verbs

An intransitive verb is one which cannot take a direct object.

A transitive verb, on the other hand, can take a direct object. For instance:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I sleep.</td>
<td>I catch the ball.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We lay down.</td>
<td>I sing the aria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They come.</td>
<td>We see him over there.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs may be both intransitive and transitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am walking.</td>
<td>I am walking the dog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Latin and English largely agree in having the same verbs be intransitive or transitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Venimus.</td>
<td>Eum interficiō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are coming.</td>
<td>I kill him.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some English verbs are made intransitive by placing what effectively is the direct object into a prepositional phrase:

I am angry at him.

We yield to the leaders.

Latin does exactly the same thing with some of the same verbs. However, rather than use a preposition as in English, the object is put into the bare dative case:

Sample verbs

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus to yield to
concēdō, -ere, concessī, concessus to yield to
īrāscor (1) to be angry at

• Īrāscor is a deponent verb (see Intensive Intermediate Latin)

Examples

Ēī Īrāscor.
I am angry at him/her.

Prīncipibus cēdimus.
We yield to the leaders.

• Latin possesses dozens of other intransitive verbs which belong to this class which take dative objects. A handful are given here. As you can see from the translations, these verbs are fully transitive in English:

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus to believe
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus to favour
fidō, -ere, fisus sum to trust
cōnfidō, -ere, cōnphisus sum to trust
diffidō, -ere, diffisus sum to distrust
īgnōscō, -ere, īgnōvī, īgnōtus to forgive
imperō (1) to command
indulgeō, -ère, indulsi, --- to indulge, grant
invideō, -ère, invidī, invīsus to envy

minitor (1) to threaten
minor (1) to threaten
noceō, -ère, nocūī, nocitus to harm
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus to spare
pāreō, -ère, pāruī, pāritus to obey
persuādeō, -ère, persuāsī, persuāsus to persuade
placēō, -ère, placūī, placitus to please
resistō, -ere, restitī, --- to resist
servīō, -ire, servīvī, servītus to serve
studeō, -ère, studūī, --- to be eager for
Examples

**Populus rēgī invidēbat.**
The people were envying the king.

**Imperātor militibus persuāsit oppida victa esse.**
The emperor persuaded the soldiers that the towns had been captured.

**Quis nōbis nocet?**
Who harms us?

Notes

• These verbs may form *impersonal passives*, in which the subject is the 3\(^{rd}\) neuter sg. *it* referring to nothing specific (for more on impersonal verbs see *Intensive Intermediate Latin*).
  
  - The dative object stays in the dative:

    **Rēgī ā populō invīsim est.**
    The king was envied by the people.
    *(literally: It was envied with reference to the king by the people.)*

    **Militibus ā imperātōre persuādētur.**
    The soldiers are being persuaded by the emperor.
    *(literally: It is being persuaded with reference to the soldiers by the emperor.)*

• Other intransitive verbs, which do not take dative objects, may also occur in the passive. This is used to stress the verbal action and not the agent.

  - This construction is non-existent in English.

    **In viīs currītur.**
    There is running in the streets.
    *(literally: It is being run in the streets).*

**Compound verbs**

Latin has a large group of verbs which occur with prepositional prefixes.

This is similar to English verbs like *understand* or *overachieve*.

When a verb possesses one of the following 12 prepositional prefixes, it takes a dative object to complete the meaning of the preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ad-</th>
<th>ante-</th>
<th>circum-</th>
<th>con-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in-</td>
<td>inter-</td>
<td>ob-</td>
<td>post-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prae-</td>
<td>prō-</td>
<td>sub-</td>
<td>super-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If the verbs are transitive, they may take an accusative direct object in addition to their dative object, but crucially these verbs cannot occur with an accusative direct object alone. The dative object must be expressed.

Sample verbs

- initiō, -ere, iniēcī, iniectus to throw in
- praesum, praeesse, prae fuī, --- to be at the head of
- praeficiō, -ere, praefeciī, praefectus to put in command of

Examples

Terrōrem nōbīs iniēcit.
He threw fear into us.

Castrīs praeeest.
He is at the head of the camp.

Novum hominem mīlitibus praefeciī.
I placed the new man in command of the soldiers.

Advanced topics

The dative with such compound verbs was used to refer to a non-physical, figurative motion. So in the examples above, there is no actual physical location to which the datives refer.

A prepositional phrase would be needed to express movement or transfer to a physical location:

In gladium eius incumbuit.
He fell upon his (someone else’s) sword.

In the development of Latin, however, the bare dative came to be used to refer to physical location as well (from Livy 2.53):

porta, cui sīgna intulerat
the gate against which he had advanced the standards

The accusative is used with verbs prefixed by trā(ns)-.

Agricolae equōs agrōs trādūcunt.
The farmers lead the horses across the fields.
Exercise 1

Translate the following.

1. Cui crēditis?
2. Līberī suīs parentibus placēre nōlunt.
3. Deus tempestātum nāvibus nautārum aliqūorum nocuit.
4. Legiōnī iuvenem praeiectī senātus.
5. Quīcumque domīnō servīt, ille nōn liber est.
6. Māter nūlliī suārum filīarum favet.
7. Rēge sagittīs interfēctō, rēgīna nōn poterat virī ibi stantī īgnōscere.
8. Crūdēlēs fīnītimī mihi imperāvērunt in oppidum aurum ferre.
11. Parce nōbīs gravem labōrem!
12. Canīs ferus nōn pāret militibus.
13. Nóbīs barbarōrum rēx nōn fīdit, quod amīcum eius interfēcimus.
15. Dēbētīs pugnae eōrum ā manibus ipsibus resistere.
16. Ĉornua taurī nocēbunt nēminī quī ēn agrō erīt.
17. Vātēs ēīs imperāvit dōna deābus portāre.
18. Quis omnibus deīs praefuit?
20. Ignem castrīs inīmīcīs inīēcimus.

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. When will the nymphs of the deep sea favour the sailors?
2. The king commands us to obey our mothers.
3. She prefers the crown itself to joy.
4. She will grant the sailors strong winds.
5. The gods favour the man, who does good for the world.
6. The boys envied the farmer’s son, who had found the reward.
7. Whom will the emperor put in command of the crowd of people?
8. I will not serve you (sg.), who has seized everything from me.
9. Whoever is eager for peace, he will find it.
10. Why do you (pl.) trust someone, whom you do not know?
Exercise 3

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a verb which takes the dative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. nēmō umquam ūllī artium validius fāvit
2. candidiorque diēs sēcrētō fāvit amōrī
3. hīs fāvit nātūrā locīs
4. dicta placent paucīs
5. haec tībi serta placent
6. tuae mihi turbae nōn placent
7. sī anteposuit suam salūtem meae
8. ignōtissimum quaestūrae candidātum nōbilissimīs anteposuit
9. nam stultī anteposuit exiliī libertātem domesticae servitūtī
10. quae virtūs voluptātī resistere vidētur
11. possum vōbīs, Quīritēs, auctūribus improbitātī hominis resistere
12. huic autem barbarae superstitionī resistere sevēritātīs

(a) he preferred the most unknown candidate for the quaestorship to the most noble
(b) if he placed his own health before mine
(c) your riots do not please me
(d) indeed did he foolishly prefer the freedom of banishment to domestic slavery?
(e) moreover to resist this barbarous superstition was of such strictness
(f) the words are pleasing to a few
(g) nature favoured these places
(h) which seems to be a virtue to resist pleasure
(i) these garlands please you?
(j) I am able with you, Roman citizens, to resist the authors of the wickedness of man
(k) and a brighter day favoured their secret love
(l) no one ever favoured any of the arts more strongly

“Quid accidit?”

“Nihil,” respondit Admētus. “Quaedam mulier peregrīna mortua est.”


Quod Herculēs amīcum bonum offendere nōluit, in domō eius mānsit.

diē day [abl. sg.]  mortua est she has died
UNIT 36

4th and 5th declensions

Background

Like the 1st declension (Unit 4) and the 2nd declension (Unit 5) the 4th and 5th declensions are characterized by specific nominative singular endings:

- 4th declension
  - masculine: -us
  - neuter: -ū
- 5th declension: -ēs

Additionally, also like the 1st and 2nd declensions, the choice of genders in the 4th and 5th declensions is rather limited:

- 4th declension: masculine and neuter
- 5th declension: feminine
  - there is one notable masculine fifth declension noun, however.

Latin structure

- 4th declension
  - The endings of the 4th declension are:
### 4th and 5th declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ūi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pl. Nom.</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-uum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>frūctus fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>frūctūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>frūctūi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>frūctum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>frūctū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pl. Nom.</td>
<td>frūctūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>frūctuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>frūctibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>frūctūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>frūctibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5th declension

The endings of the 5th declension are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-ēī ~ -ēī</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-ēī ~ -ēī</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-ēm</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

The alternative endings in the gen. and dat. singulars are partitioned as follows:

- if the stem ends in a vowel, then the ending -ēī is selected
  - for example: *di-* from *diēs* day gives *diēī*
- if the stem ends in a consonant, then the ending -eī is selected
  - for example: *fid-* from *fidēs* faith gives *fideī*
  - the stem is found by dropping the nominative sg. ending -ēs

5th declension nouns are feminine.

- The noun *diēs* day and derivatives of it (e.g. *merīdiēs* midday) are exceptionally masculine.

**Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>fidēs faith</th>
<th>diēs day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fidēī</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fidēī</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fidēm</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fidē</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>fidēs</th>
<th>diēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fidērum</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fidēbus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fidēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fidēbus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced topics

The noun domus house belongs to the 4th declension but:

- it is feminine
- it has a few 2nd declension forms (in bold below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>4th declension</th>
<th>2nd declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domī ~ domūs</td>
<td>domōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domūi</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domōs ~ domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- it’s locative sg. is domī

4th declension nouns whose nominative ends in -cus allow a dat. and abl. pl. in -ubus

- lacubus ~ lacibus from lacus, -ūs lake

Exercise 1

Determine which case, number, and gender the following adjectives are in. Then make the nouns listed below agree with each adjective. Unpredictable genders are listed in parentheses. Not every noun will be able to agree with every adjective, since the latter are already marked for gender!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēs</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domī</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domūi</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senātus</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciēs</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domō</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 difficile [diffilis, difficile difficult]
2 plēnīs [plēnus, -a, -um full]
3 terribilibus [terribilis, terribile terrifying]
4 brevis [brevis, breve short]
5 cōpiōsās [cōpiōsus, -a, -um rich, abundant]
6 pulchrō [pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful]
7 malōs [malus, -a, -um bad, evil]
8 ūnfēlicēs [ūnfēlix, ūnfēlicis unhappy]
9 ācre [ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen]
10 commūnium [commūnis, commūne common]
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1. Exercitūs ē castrīs ad oppidum aliquod ab rēge ductī sunt.
2. Sagittae ab arcū eius reliquentās impetum incipient.
3. Quālia animālia in hōc lacū vīvunt?
4. Rēgīna lūctū implētā nēmō quidquam facere poterat.
5. Pulchrōs versūs scripserīt poēta nōbilis caecusque.
7. Fidē populī frāctā, rēgīnae non iam est potestās.
8. Tōtum diem mānsit quisque in carcere.
9. Capite cornua illūs taurī ferī!
10. Manibus parvīs portābō dōnum ad templum vātīs.
11. Vidērisē vultum istūs rēgīnae, cui nūllum honōrem dabimus?
13. Omnia domūs urbis frequentis exercitūs delētēae erant.
15. Moenibus aedicātīs spēs salūtis crēscet.
16. Ćūr impetūs ab inimīcīs barbārīs contrā vōs fertur?
17. Properā domum rē inceptā.
18. Facēs multae sunt nūbibus.
19. Poetā versūs scribēnte nympha auctōrī auxilium dat.
20. Senātuī aquīla deōrum pāret.

Exercise 3

Translate the following into Latin.

1. I had envied the bow of the strong soldier.
2. We do not wish to remember our grief.
3. His faith was similar to that one’s hope.
4. The nearest army made an attack against the wretched senate.
5. She is strong in her knees.
6. The pastures stood between the house and the town before the war.
7. When the sun shines high in the sky, the days are long.
8. Whatever things you (sg.) find, you ought to keep them.
9. The horns of the bull having been touched, the animal ran.
10. That lake was built by hands alone.
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a 4th or 5th declension noun. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 hic servō spē libertātis magnīisque persuādet praemīs (Caesar Gal.)
2 cētera quae ad mē ēisdem litterīs scribīs dē nostrā spē (Cicero Att.)
3 nam saepe senex spē carminīs ambō lūserat (Vergil Ecl.)
4 ita mihi saepe occurrīt vultus eius querentis (Cicero Att.)
5 ūnus erat tōtō naturae vultus in orbe (Ovid Met.)
6 isī color immūtātus est, vultus, ārātiō, mēns dēnique excidit (Cicero Ver.)
7 quem timor prohibēbat cuiusquam fideī suam committere salūtem (Caesar Gal.)
8 cuius fideī liberōs tuōs tē tūtō committere putāēs (Cicero Fam.)
9 suās civītātīsque fortūnās eius fideī permissūrum (Caesar Gal.)
10 addis cornua pauperī (Horace Od.)
11 candentis vaccae media inter cornua fundit (Vergil Aeneid)
12 ut duōbus ictibus quasi cornua efficeret (Suetonius Dom.)

(a) (he) would give up his own fortunes and that of the state to his faith
(b) he persuades the slave with hope of freedom and great rewards
(c) you increase the horns of a poor man
(d) the one face of nature was in the entire world
(e) the rest which you write to me with the same letter about our hope
(f) the colour changed of that one, his face, his speech, and finally his mind failed him
(g) so the face of him complaining often occurs to me
(h) he might accomplish them in two blows as if horns
(i) indeed the old man often ridiculed them both out of hope of a song
(j) she pours between in the middle of the horns of the shining white cow
(k) to whose trust you might think yourself safe to commit your children
(l) whom fear prevented from committing his own safety to anyone’s trust

Reading: Hercules and His Friend Admetus, part 2


“Quid spectātis? Venīte et bibite mēcum!”
“Nōs bibere nōn possumus,” dīxērunt servī.
“Cūr nōn potestis bibere?” interrogāvit Herculēs. “Quod fēmina peregrīna mortua est?”

“Fēmina peregrīna? Quis hoc tibi dīxit?”
“Admētus ipse. Rēx mendāx esse nōn potest.”
“Ita est. Sed Admētus hospitālis esse voluit.”
“Cūr vōs omnēs tam tristēs estis? Respondēte! Dīcite mihi. Quis est illa fēmina?”

“Alcestis, rēgīna nostra.”

mortua est she has died
UNIT 37
Comparatives

Background

Adjectives occur in 3 degrees:

- **positive**: big small beautiful
- **comparative**: bigger smaller more beautiful
- **superlative**: biggest smallest most beautiful

Up till now we have only dealt with adjectives in the positive degree (Units 6 and 17). This unit deals with comparatives and the next with superlatives.

As the name suggests comparatives are used to compare two things:

Susan is taller than Jessica.  
This comedian is more humorous than the officer.

English comparatives are formed either by adding an -er suffix (bigger, smaller) or by placing more in front of the adjective (more beautiful, more cheerful).

As a general rule of thumb adjectives that are one syllable or two syllables and end in -y take -er. Otherwise they take more.

The thing being compared to is introduced by than.

Latin structure

In order to form the comparative in Latin, first go to the adjective stem.

- You get to the stem of 1st–2nd declension adjectives by dropping the -a of the feminine:
  
  pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful $\rightarrow$ pulchr-
  dēfessus, dēfessa, dēfessum tired $\rightarrow$ dēfess-
  vīvus, vīva, vīvum alive $\rightarrow$ vīv-
• You get to the stem of 3rd declension adjectives by dropping the -is of the genitive:

3-terminations

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, fierce → ācr-

2-terminations

fortis, forte strong → fort-

1-termination

ingēns, ingentis huge → ingent-

To the stem, add the suffix -ior for masculine and feminine and -ius for neuter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M./F.</th>
<th>Nt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pulchr-</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>défess-</td>
<td>défessior</td>
<td>défessius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vív-</td>
<td>vívior</td>
<td>vívius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ácr-</td>
<td>ácrior</td>
<td>ácrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fort-</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingent-</td>
<td>ingentior</td>
<td>ingentius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

more beautiful
more tired
more alive
sharper, fiercer
stronger
more huge

The comparatives are declined as 3rd declension adjectives.
Unlike positive 3rd declension adjectives, they do NOT take i-stem endings aside from the ablative singular where it is optional. So, they have genitive plural -um and neuter nominative and accusative plural -a.
The ablative in -ī is common among poets and older and classical prose.
Syntax of the comparative

The *than*-part of a comparison is expressed by *quam*. What follows *quam* is in the *same case* as what it is being compared to.

**Vir fortior est quam puer.**
A man is stronger than a boy.

**Moenia urbis altiora sunt quam villae.**
The city’s walls are taller than the villa’s.

**Cōgitō puellam hanc défessiōrem esse quam illam.**
I think this girl is more tired than that one.

A bare ablative can replace *quam*. This is the *ablative of comparison*.

**Vir fortior est puerō.**
A man is stronger than a boy.

**Cōgitō puellam hanc défessiōrem esse illā.**
I think this girl is more tired than that one.

An ablative may also be used to express just how much the two things/people being compared actually differ. This is the *ablative of degree of difference*.

**Vir fortior multō est puerō.**
A man is stronger than a boy by much.

**Quantō by how much** in unison with **tantō by so much** expresses **the more X . . . the more X**:

**Quantō pulchrior tempestās erat, tantō fēliciōrēs erāmus.**
The more beautiful the weather was, the happier we were.

- **quō . . . hōc** is an alternative to this construction

  **Quō pulchrior tempestās erat, hōc fēliciōrēs erāmus.**
The more beautiful the weather was, the happier we were.

When no notion of comparison is discernible, a comparative can simply be translated as *rather*.

**Vir fortior est.**
The man is rather strong.
Exercise 1

Convert the following adjectives from the *positive* degree to the *comparative*, while keeping *case*, *gender*, and *number* constant. Some may have multiple possibilities.

1 difficile  
   [difficilis, difficile difficult]
2 longīs  
   [longus, -a, -um long]
3 terribilibus  
   [terribilis, terribile terrifying]
4 brevis  
   [brevis, breve short]
5 cōpiōsās  
   [cōpiōsus, -a, -um rich, abundant]
6 pulchrārum  
   [pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful]
7 iūcundōs  
   [iūcundus, -a, -um joyful]
8 sacrī  
   [sacer, sacra, sacrum holy, sacred]
9 fēlīx  
   [fēlix, fēlicis happy]
10 sapientium  
   [sapiēns, sapientis wise]

Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Quantō gravius bellum est, tantō territior populus oppidī est.
2 Vir fortior nōn capiētur et interficiētur.
3 Cucurrērant per silvam nocte animālia ingentiōra.
4 Saxīs in viīs leniōres sunt legiōnēs exercitūs.
5 Fīnitimī nostri amīciōres sunt vestris.
6 Itinere factō bibimus vīnum mītius, quod mulier hospitis nōbis dederat.
7 Cuius vultus pulchrior vidētur?
8 Vidē nūbem candidiōrem, quae in caelō fulsit.
9 Ager hic agricolae huius nōn est lātior quam ille istīus.
10 Dēfessiōribus somnō captīs legiōnī nūlla potestās fuit.
11 Quō clārior poēta est, hōc pulchriōres versūs scribit.
12 Lupī celeriōres canibus sunt.
13 Vult rēx ūnulae moenia altīōra quam templum manibus populī aedificāre.
14 Circum flūmen dea crūdēlior equōs, quī aquam prope rīpam bibunt, capiēt.
15 Urbs frequentior est quam rūs.
16 Cibus, quī factus ā senī virī est, erat dulcior quam cibus iuvenis virī.
17 Studēmus carni feriōris et pinguīōris animālis.
18 Quantō graviōra vulnera nautae sunt, tantō ūnīciōriōres amīcī eius sunt.
19 Opera pulchriōra auctōris clāriōris legere dēbuimus.
20 Saeviorne dea est quam illa?
Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 When will you (sg.) receive a freer life?
2 The cloud is blacker than the darkness of the cave.
3 The more wretched you (sg.) are, the more unhappy the life is, which you lead. You will have all the grief of the world.
4 The sail having been set, the sailors were seeking a more sacred animal.
5 Which guardian will find the more cruel danger?
6 The slower soldiers remained in the camp.
7 We desire the fatter sheep.
8 His arms are stronger than his head.
9 The waves, harsher by much, will destroy the trees of the island and their branches.
10 We prefer a stronger sword to a newer arrow.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a comparative adjective. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1 sed antīquiōrēs litterae quam ruere coepit (Cicero Att.)
2 litterāsque antīquiōrēs altiōrēsque penetrāverat (Gellius)
3 iūniōr sum tempore vōs autem antīquiōrēs (St Jerome Job)
4 ad altiōra et nōn concessa tendere (Livy)
5 in loca altiōra collēsque impeditiōrēs equīt (Livy)
6 nox prōvecta et nox altior et dein concubia altiōra (Apuleius Met.)
7 sunt etiam iūdicēs quīdam tristiōrēs (Quintilian Inst.)
8 quōrum in voltū habitant oculī meī tristiōrēs vidēbam (Cicero Phil.)
9 tristiōrēs autem sine maximō dolōre audīre nōn possint (Cicero Dom.)
10 sed breviōrem mē duae rēs faciunt (Cicero Fam.)
11 brevitās tuārum litterārūrum mē quoque breviōrem in scribendō facit (Cicero Fam.)
12 ūnam breviōrem, alteram efficit partem longiōrem (Vitruvius)

(a) onto higher places and hills more impassable for the cavalry
(b) he entered into older and higher literature
(c) advanced sleep and a deeper night and then a deeper bedtime
(d) it makes the one side shorter, the other longer
(e) in whose face my eyes lived, I was seeing them as sadder
(f) moreover sadder men might not be able to hear without very great sorrow  
(g) there are even certain, rather sad judges 
(h) but two things make me more brief 
(i) the conciseness of your letter makes me also briefer in writing 
(j) I am younger in time, you, moreover, are older 
(k) to aim for higher and non-granted things 
(l) but the letter is older than when he began to go to ruin

Reading: Hercules and His Friend Admetus, part 3

“O mē miserum! Ego, hospes, in hāc domō dolōris cantāvī. Quid prō meō amīcō fidēlī facere possum?”

In silentiō profundō paulum cōgitāvit. Deinde repentē surrēxit.

“Mortem cōgam. Admētō rēgīnam reddam.”


“Nōvistīne hanc fēminam, Admētē?”

“Haec est fraus,” exclāmāvit Admētus.


Sīc Herculēs sē amīcum fidēlem praebuit.

mortua erat she had died
UNIT 38
Superlatives

Background

The superlative is used to express an unsurpassed level. For instance:

*John is the fastest swimmer.*
*I liked the most engaging professor.*
*Tonight has to be the coldest it has been all year!*

In a sense while comparatives compare two persons or things, a superlative compares one person or thing to every other person or thing within a certain defined sphere:

*John is faster than Paul.*  (comparative: comparing John and Paul)
*John is the fastest runner on the team.*  (superlative: comparing John to every member on the team)
*Susan is the most beautiful woman.*  (superlative: comparing Susan to every woman in the world)

Superlatives are formed by adding the suffix -est (biggest, smallest) or by placing most (most beautiful, most cheerful) in front of the adjective.

As with comparatives, adjectives either of one syllable or of two syllables and ending in -y take -est. Otherwise they take most.

Latin structure

In order to form the superlative in Latin, first go to the stem. (See the previous unit to refresh your memory on how to locate the stem.)
Add the endings -issimus, -a, -um:

dēfessus, -a, -um → dēfessissimus, -a, -um  most tired
vīvus, -a, -um → vīvissimus, -a, -um  most alive
fortis, forte → fortissimus, -a, -um  strongest
ingēns, ingentis → ingentissimus, -a, -um  most huge

There are two small exceptions to the rule above:

- **Exception 1:** If the masculine singular dictionary form of the adjective ends in -er, then add -rimus, -a, -um directly to the dictionary form:

  pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum → pulcherrimus, -a, -um  most beautiful
  ācer, ācris, ācre → ācerrimus, -a, -um  sharpest, fiercest

- **Exception 2:** The following 6 adjectives take -limus, -a, -um:

  facilis, facile easy → facil-limus, -a, -um
  diffīcilis, diffīcle difficult → diffīcil-limus, -a, -um
  similis, simile similar → simil-limus, -a, -um
  dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar → dissimil-limus, -a, -um
  gracilis, gracile slender → gracil-limus, -a, -um
  humilis, humile humble, low → humil-limus, -a, -um

**Syntax of the superlative**

The *genitive* is used to express the defined set of which a person or thing possesses an unsurpassed quality. This is an instance of the *partitive genitive* (see Unit 12):

Rēgīnā pulcherrima fēminārūm erat.
The queen was the most beautiful of women.

Cōgitō eum celerrimum nūntiōrum esse.
I think him to be the fastest of messengers.

The *ablative of degree of difference* (Unit 37) may also be used with the superlative.

Vir fortissimus multō est.
The man is the strongest by much.
**Quam** + the superlative = *as . . . as possible*

**Rēgīna quam pulcherrima est.**
The queen is as beautiful as possible.

**Cōgitō eum quam celerrimum esse.**
I think him to be as fast as possible.

When an idea of comparison is not discernible, a superlative can simply translate as *very*.

**Rēgīna pulcherrima est.**
The queen is very beautiful.

**Irregular comparison**

A handful of adjectives do not form their comparatives and superlatives according to the rules laid out in this and the previous unit. Rather, the stems to which the endings are added are different from the stem of the positive degree – an instance of *suppletion*.

- the stems may be *partially suppletive*, adding or transforming one sound unpredictably or
- they may be *totally suppletive*, using a wholly different stem.
  All the irregular adjectives are examples of total suppletion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um well</td>
<td>melior, melius better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um bad</td>
<td>peior, peius worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um great</td>
<td>māior, māius greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um small</td>
<td>minus, minor smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um much</td>
<td>plūs more</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

- **plūs** is only neuter and is used substantivally (i.e. like a noun), taking a *partitive genitive*

  **Plūs īnsulārum invēnimus.**
  We found more islands.
  *(literally: We found more of islands.)*
• **Plūs** is interchangeable with its plural forms **plūrēs**, **plūra** which function as normal adjectives and thus agree with a noun in gender, number, and case.

**Plūrēs įnĪslās invēnimus.**

We found more islands.

• The comparatives are declined as expected: **melior**, **meliōris**, **meliōrī**, **meliōrem** . . .

**Exercise 1**

Convert the following adjectives from the *positive* degree to the *superlative*, while keeping *case*, *gender*, and *number* constant. Some may have more than one possibility.

1 dulcī  [dulcis, dulce sweet]
2 immortālium  [immortālis, immortāle immortal]
3 bonam  [bonus, -a, -um good]
4 longō  [longus, -a, -um long]
5 sacrīs  [sacer, sacra, sacrum holy, sacred]
6 parvārum  [parvus, -a, -um small]
7 lātī  [lātus, -a, -um wide]
8 sapiēns  [sapiēns, sapiēntīs wise]
9 facilibus  [facilis, facile easy]
10 senem  [senex, senis old]

**Exercise 2**

Translate the following.

1 Pulcherrima fīlia rēgis capiētur ab inimīcis nautīs.
2 Apud parentēs meōs bībam vīnum dulcissīnum.
3 Prīnceps senātūs dēbet esse quam nōbilissīnum.
4 Plūrimōs diēs huius annī nihil fēcīmus.
5 Māiōrem laudem et immortālem pācem dē vāte deōrum petēverīnt.
6 Optīma legiō, quae oppida īnūsulae servāverat, crēdīdīt imperātōrī.
7 In silvā nēmō vīdit candidissīnum celerrīmūque equum.
8 Exercītū turpissimō mīlitēs ab urbe sine victōriā cucurrērunt.
9 Maximumne est templum, quod umquam vīdistī?
10 Pessimīs impetibus cīvibus nūllus cibus erat.
11 Agricola sēmina in terram firmissimam iēcit.
12 Versūs quam pulcherrimōs scrīpsit poēta clārissimus.
13 Nōn possunt servī veterēs novissimō hominī placēre.
14 Flēns puer in āram sacerrimam pōnētur.
15 Nōn fīdimus huic, quī in monte altissimō habitat.
16 Timētisne mortem miserrimam?
17 Mel est semper dulcissimum cibōrum omnium, quī in vīllā sunt.
18 Vōcem tristissimam equitis audīvimus.
19 Vēnistis ad urbem maximam tōtius orbis terrārum.
20 Ferissima animālia silvae possunt hominibus fēminīisque illīus oppidī nocēre.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 What will you (sg.) do, after the strongest storm will have come?
2 No one does a very wicked crime.
3 Whichever tree is better, we will find it.
4 While the farmer drives the flock of sheep, the slowest clouds stood in the sky.
5 Why do you (pl.) ask the most aid from the servants of the very swift god?
6 No one is more worthy than him. He is the most worthy citizen of Rome.
7 Do not indulge (sg.) the happiest and most joyful children!
8 The most wretched queen persuaded us to go.
9 The highest walls having been destroyed, the enemies threw soldiers into the camp.
10 Though the sun shines in the sky, the cave is as dark as possible.

Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains a superlative adjective or an irregular comparative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.
1 in fortūnās optimī cuiusque ērumpent
2 ad supplēmentum longē optimī generis mīlitum habēbat
3 ut optimī statūs auctor dīcar
4 vidēte nunc quam versa et mūtāta in peiōrem partem sint omnia
5 certē equidem puerum peiōrem quam tē nōvī nēminem
6 nam ego sī iūrātus peiōrem hominem quae rerēm
7 prōcēdit in tumulum facillimum vīsū însidianibus
8 petō ā tē, id quod facillimum factū
9 facillimum erit ab cō tībi ipsī împetrāre
10 quī nūntiāre nuper optimī generis mīlitum habēbat
11 tum enim erāmus in maximā spē
12 prō hāc nōbilitāte pars maxima cīvitātis in armīs fuit

(a) then indeed we were in the greatest hope
(b) it will be very easy for you yourself to obtain (them) from him
(c) who announced that the preceding night, with the greatest storm having arisen
(d) he had for reinforcements the best kind of soldiers by far
(e) that I may be said to be the author of the best standing
(f) see now that everything is turned and changed into a worse part
(g) he proceeded to the mound, very easily seen by those waiting in ambush
(h) for I, if having taken an oath, may seek a worse man
(i) certainly, indeed, I know no boy worse than you
(j) I ask from you that which is very easily done
(k) they would have burst into the fortunes of every very good man
(l) for this nobility the greatest part of the state was in arms

Reading: The Death of Hercules, part 1


cōnātus est he tried
Adverbs are closely related to adjectives. While the latter modify nouns, adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

He spoke very **quickly**. (modifying the verb spoke)
He spoke very **quickly**. (modifying the adverb **quickly**)
The **impeccably** dressed man spoke very **quickly**. (modifying the adjective **dressed**).

Since adjectives and adverbs are close kin, it should be unsurprising that aside from some very common adverbs (e.g. **well**, **very**, **often**, **again**) many are formed from adjectives by simply adding –**ly**.

lately  happily  terribly  rudely  rapidly
(late)  (happy)  (terrible)  (rude)  (rapid)

Adverbs also form **comparatives** and **superlatives**.
Comparative adverbs in English consist of more + the adverb, while superlative adverbs consist of most + the adverb.

Positive   Comparative   Superlative
intelligently more intelligently most intelligently
quickly    more quickly   most quickly

As with comparative adjectives, than often accompanies comparative adverbs. As opposed to comparative adjectives which contrast two people or things, comparative adverbs usually contrast two actions or qualities.

**John** bikes more quickly that he runs.
**Theresa** thinks more radically than **Chris** does.
**That** dress is more amazingly gorgeous than that yellow one.
• The first example is comparing the actions biking with running and the second example the actions Theresa’s thinking with Chris’s thinking.
• The third example is comparing the qualities of being amazingly gorgeous.

Latin structure

Adverbs are formed by adding -ē to the stem of 1st–2nd declension adjectives and -iter/-ter to the stem of 3rd-declension adjectives.
-ter is used with those adjectives whose nominative ends in -ns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchrē</td>
<td>beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre</td>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>sharply/fiercely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiēns, sapientis</td>
<td>sapienter</td>
<td>wisely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are plenty of adverbs, however, which do not follow these rules, a very small sampling of which are:

- clam secretly
- iam already
- modo only
- multum much
- paulātim gradually
- primum at first

The **comparative** adds the ending -ius to the adjectival stem.
It is identical to the neuter nom./acc. sg. of the comparative adjective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>more beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer, ācris, ācre</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>more sharply/fiercely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incrēdibilis, incrēdibile</td>
<td>incrēdibilius</td>
<td>more incredibly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **superlative** adds the ending -issimē to the adjectival stem.
Those adjectives that formed the superlative adjective with -rimus or -limus likewise take -rimē or -limē respectively as their superlative adverbial forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>incrēdibilis, incrēdibile</td>
<td>incrēdibilissimē</td>
<td>most incredibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
<td>most beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, facile</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
<td>most easily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the same syntactic constructions apply to adverbs as to adjectives, including

- the ablative of degree of difference
- quam or the ablative of comparison with comparatives
- quam + superlative expressing as . . . as possible

Rēgīna pulchrius multō canit quam rēx.
The queen sings more beautifully by much than the king.
Rēgīna pulchrius multō canit rēge.
The queen sings more beautifully by much than the king.

Puerī quam celērimē cucurrērunt.
The boys ran as quickly as possible.

Irregular comparison

A handful of adverbs do not form their comparatives and superlatives according to the rules laid out in the last section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partial suppletion</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diū for a long time</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>diūtissimē longest (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere greatly</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>nearer</td>
<td>maximē most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>prīus</td>
<td>previously, before</td>
<td>prīnum first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope near</td>
<td>proprius</td>
<td>nearer</td>
<td>proximē nearest, next</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total suppletion</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bene well</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>optimē best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male badly</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>pessimē worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum much</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>plūrimum most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum little</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>minimē least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

- prīus has no positive degree since its root meaning previous implies a comparison
- observe that prīnum and plūrimum do not end in -ē

Exercise 1

Form the positive, comparative, and superlative adverbs from the following adjectives.

1 amīcus, -a, -um friendly  
2 celer, celeris, celere swift  
3 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful  
4 iūcundus, -a, -um joyful  
5 brevis, breve short  
6 levis, leve light  
7 asper, aspera, asperum rough, harsh  
8 lātus, -a, -um wide  
9 difficilis, difficile difficult  
10 dignus, -a, -um worthy
Exercise 2

Translate the following.

1 Canit pulchrius quam ego.
2 Vēla dant quam celerrimē.
3 Saevē hominēs, quī in carcere erant, rēgīna interfēcit.
4 Vulnerātō ōre, respondet nunc lentius.
5 Domī mānsimus fēliciter.
6 Sagittās militēs fēri iaciēbant.
7 Legiō urbem senātūs causā turpiter dēlēvit.
8 Bene doctus canis puerum captum in antrō servāvit.
9 Hīc diū vīximus.
10 Nōlīte facere peius quam ēī.
11 Prīmum ad īnsulam nāvibus nāvigāre dēbētis.
12 Quod animal labōrat in agrīs plūrimum?
13 Ad castra propius venient exercitūs inimīcī.
14 Nēmō sapientius cōgitat quam ille.
15 Deīs nōs mītius pugnat tempestās.
16 Amīcē mihi pater meus īgnōscit.
17 Quam facillīmē parentibus pārēbō.
18 Eī rēx crūdēlis persuāsit facilīus quam rēgīna sapiēns.
19 Clam paulātīmque it caecus auctor ad villam istīus virī dīvītis.
20 Bellō inceptō prō rēge humilīter dūx inimicōrūm stat.

Exercise 3

Translate the following.

1 We drink joyfully, because the children saved their own dog.
2 The horse firmly takes the big branches of the tree with its wide mouth.
3 I only had to drag the bull, which had been killed.
4 Why did she do all those things secretly?
5 The winds of the storm will strike the small town as fiercely as possible.
6 The holy nymphs sing more beautifully than the farmers.
7 The old make laws more wisely than do the young.
8 A bow and arrows were found recently in the forest.
9 He falls into a dream as quickly as possible.
10 The sun was shining in the sky as radiantly as possible.
Exercise 4

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an adverb. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. nēmō melius iūdicāre potest quam tū
   (Cicero ad Brut.)
2. tibi verō ipsī certē nēmō melius dabit
   (Cicero Fam.)
3. melius lūgēbitis ambō
   (Ovid Met.)
4. ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit
   (Caesar Gal.)
5. nōlō tē iactārī diūtius
   (Plautus Trīn.)
6. dubitābitis etiam diūtius, iūdicēs
   (Cicero Font.)
7. quam sapienter aut quam fortiter nihil attinet ā disputārī
   (Cicero Fam.)
8. quī deōrum mūneribus sapienter ütī
   (Horace Od.)
9. illīc indignissimīm cāsum sapienter tolerāns
   (Tacitus Ann.)
10. sīc lētālis hiems paulātim in pectora vēnit
    (Ovid Met.)
11. paulātim sēsē tollit mare et altius undās ērigit
    (Vergil Aeneid)
12. sī paulātim haec cōnsuetūdō serpere ac prōdīre coeperit
    (Cicero Div. Caec.)

(a) how wisely or how strongly nothing is of importance by being discussed
(b) I do not wish you to be flung any longer
(c) no one is able to judge better than you
(d) who use the gifts of the gods wisely
(e) certainly in fact no one will give better to you yourself
(f) in this way deadly winter came gradually into (her) chest
(g) better that you both mourn
(h) he enduring wisely his most unworthy misfortune there
(i) will you still doubt longer, judges?
(j) when he understood that he was being led for a rather long time
(k) the sea gradually lifts itself up and raises its waves up higher
(l) if this habit begins to crawl and progress gradually

Reading: The Death of Hercules, part 2

Deinde vidēns eōs, quī adstābant, rogāvit, “Potestis rogum accendere?”
At omnēs recūsābant, “Tāle scelus numquam committēmus.”
UNIT 40
Uses of the ablative II

Background
Unit 8 presented several uses of the ablative case – the catch-all case of Latin.
Since Unit 8 other uses of the ablative have been presented. This unit has two goals:

• to catalogue in one place the uses of the ablative which have been introduced since Unit 8
• to present a few more uses of the ablative

Uses of the ablative since Unit 8

I Ablative of personal agent (Unit 19)
• An ablative preceded by the preposition ā/ab is used to express the human agent of a passive verb.

Mīles ab illō homīne interfectus erat.
The soldier had been killed by that man.

II Ablative of means
• This use must be contrasted with the ablative of means (Unit 8) which is used to express the non-human agent of a passive verb.
  ▪ It is a bare ablative without an accompanying preposition.

Agricola sagittīs interfectus erat.
The farmer had been killed by arrows.

III Ablative absolute (Unit 34)
• A participle (Unit 33) in the ablative in unison with a noun in the ablative expresses a subordinate clause which provides background information to the main clause.
• The noun in the ablative absolute can be neither the subject nor the direct object of the main clause.

_Agricolā canente, labor multus celeriter factus est._
The farmer singing, much work was done quickly.

**IV Ablative of comparison (Unit 37)**

• A bare ablative can express the person or thing to whom something or someone is being compared.

  - _quam_ + a noun in the same case as the person or thing being compared to is an alternative construction.

    _Mīlitēs exercitūs nostrī sunt fortīōrēs hostibus._
The soldiers of our army are stronger than the enemies.

**V Ablative of degree of difference (Unit 37)**

• A bare ablative is used to express to what degree the two compared things differ.

    _Mūlitēs exercitūs nostrī multō fortīōrēs sunt._
The soldiers of our army are stronger by much.

**New uses of the ablative**

**VI Ablative of separation**

• The ablative is used to express something which is lacking, deprived, or separated.

  - The prepositions _ā/ab, ē/ex_, and _dē_ may be used.

  - The verbs used in this construction are:

    - _careō, -ēre, carūī, caritus_ to lack
    - _egeō, -ēre, egūī_ to be wanting
    - _liberō_ (1) to free
    - _prīvō_ (1) to deprive
    - _solvō, -ēre, solvī, solūtus_ to free, release

**Examples**

_Carēsne aurō et argentō?_
Do you lack gold and silver?
Eōs perīculō liberābimus.
We will free them from danger.

Bellum eum spē privāvit.
The war deprived him of hope.

VII Ablative of source
- The ablative can be used to express descent or origin.
- It is very common with the following two past participles:
  - nātus, -a, -um born
  - ortus, -a, -um arisen

rēge deōrum ortus
arisen from the king of gods

parientibus bonīs nāta
born of good parents

VIII Ablative of time
- The ablative of a time word expresses when something occurred.

Eā nocte nēmō hīc mānsit.
That night no one remained here.

Illō mēnse pugnābam contrā meōs finitimōs.
That month I was fighting against my neighbours.

- The ablative of a time word with a future verb expresses when or within how much time something will take place.

Septem diēbus venient mīlitēs.
Within seven days the soldiers will come.

Proximō diē bellum inceptum erit.
The next day battle will have begun.

IX Ablative of place from which
- The ablative commanded by the prepositions ā/ab and ē/ex indicates the origin of movement.
- When, however, one is leaving a specific town, city, small island, or either domus, -ūs (f.) house or rūs, rūris (nt.) countryside, the bare ablative is used.
  - For the 2nd declension forms interspersed in the declension of domus, see Unit 36.
- This is the same class of nouns which form a locative (Unit 29) and which can use a bare accusative to indicate direction towards a place (Unit 30).

   *Ímus rūre Rōmam.*
   We are going from the countryside to Rome.

   *Domō veniet.*
   S/he will come from home.

**X Ablative with verbs**

- Aside from the verbs which take an ablative of separation a few other verbal expressions take an ablative.
  - *opus est* it is necessary
    this takes:
    - an ablative indicating what is necessary
    - a dative indicating for whom the noun expressed in the ablative is necessary

   *Pāce nōbīs opus est.*
   We need peace.
   *Literally:* It is necessary to us with respect to peace.

- A class of deponent verbs takes ablative objects.
  - A deponent verb is a verb which only possesses passive forms though they have active meanings.

Deponent verbs are discussed in *Intensive Intermediate Latin.*

  - The list of verbs is:

    *fruor, -ī, frūctus sum* to enjoy
    *fungor, -ī, fūntus sum* to perform
    *potior, -īrī, potitus sum* to gain possession of
    *ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum* to use
    *vēscor, -ī* to eat

**Examples**

*Pāce fruimur.*
We enjoy peace.

*Agrīs rēgis rēginaeque potientur.*
They will gain possession of the fields of the king and queen.

*Quō ūsī estis?*
What did you (pl.) use?
Exercise 1

Determine what type of ablative the underlined portions would be if translated into Latin.

1. We noticed that Frank was slower than Elizabeth.
2. My friend is coming from Cardiff.
3. The politicians enjoy kickbacks.
4. She was born to a grateful family.
5. That show was rather funny by a long shot.
6. The mouse was caught by the trap.
7. The mouse was caught by my mother.
8. In five months we will be done school!
9. What are you lacking now?
10. The storm having missed the town, the citizens were jubilant.
11. Tomorrow night there is a party.
12. They freed the men from prison.
13. The cake was eaten by the boy.
14. Risen from the sea the whale dove back into the water.
15. After so much work was done on our day off, we’re happy to go out from our home.

Exercise 2

Each of the following unedited Latin passages contains an ablative. Match each passage with the English translation which follows. To assist you, try to think of English derivatives which stem from some of the Latin words.

1. arāneās dēciām dē pariete  
   (Plautus St.)
2. omnia domō eius abstulit  
   (Cicero Ver.)
3. omnium rērum nāttūrā cognitā īberāmur mortis metū  
   (Cicero Fin.)
4. cui vīginī hīs annīs supplicātiō dēcrēta est  
   (Cicero Phil.)
5. amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs  
   (Caesar Gal.)
6. dīcitur oculīs sē prīvāsse  
   (Cicero Fin.)
7. novō cōnsiliō mihi nunc opus est  
   (Plautus Ps.)
8. lūx quā fruimur ā deō nōbīs datur  
   (Cicero S. Rosc.)
9. multīs annīs nōn vēnit  
   (Cicero S. Rosc.)
10. amīcitia . . . nūllō locō exclūditur  
    (Cicero Amic.)
11. nōn opus est verbīs sed fūstibus  
    (Cicero Pis.)
12. nōn sōlum domō, dē quā cognōstis, sed tōtā urbe careō  
    (Cicero Dom.)
(a) he did not come for many years
(b) the light which we enjoy is given to us by a god
(c) young men born of the most distinguished family
(d) he carried away everything from his house
(e) it is said he deprived himself of eyes
(f) friendship is shut out from no place
(g) I will knock down the spider webs from the wall
(h) with the nature of all things being known, we are freed from the fear of death
(i) for whom in the last twenty years has a thanksgiving been decreed?
(j) I need now a new plan
(k) there is no need of words but of clubs
(l) not only do I lack my home, about which you know, but the whole city

Reading: Excerpt from Caesar’s Gallic Wars

Note that subordinate clauses, such as relative clauses and quod-clauses, are indented. The level of indentation indicates which clause each subordinate phrase immediately depends on for its meaning. In the first sentence, for instance, lines 2–4 all depend on line 1, whereas lines 5 and 6 depend on line 4.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs,
quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae,
alia Aquitānī,
tertiam
     quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae,
   nostrā Gallī appellantur.

Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen,
ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,
proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt,
proximīque sunt Germānīs,
quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Note dīvidit for grammatically expected dīvidunt.
A. Determine whether the following verbs take a dative object because they are intransitives or because they have a prefix. Which verb does not take a dative object?

1. īrāscor
2. trāducō
3. crēdō
4. praeficiō
5. circumplector
6. placeō

B. Determine the case and number of each of the following nouns. Some may have multiple possibilities.

1. diēbus
2. faciēs
3. cornūs
4. fidērum
5. cornua
6. senātuī

C. Make the adjectives pulchrior, pulchrius more beautiful and pulcherrimus, -a, -um agree with each of the following nouns.

1. templum
2. nautam
3. filiās
4. somniōrum
5. filīis
6. villae

D. Form adverbs from the following adjectives.

1. laetus, -a, -um
2. laetior, laetus
3. laetissimus, -a, -um
4. ācer, ācris, ācre
5. ācrior, ācrius
6. ācerrimus, -a, -um

E. Which types of ablative would the following be rendered into Latin as?

1. She is faster than him by much.
2. The storm having passed, we all went outside.
3. Born of the big kangaroo, the newborn was healthy.
4. You will be there within a week.
Key to exercises

UNIT 1

1 1 nauta: two syllables; diphthong 2 poëta: long vowel 3 nätüra: long vowel 4 via: two syllables 5 vîta: two syllables; long vowel 6 pugna: two syllables; two consonants 7 adulēscents: two consonants 8 imperātōre: long vowel 9 rēx only syllable 10 lībertās: two consonants 11 mīles: two syllables; long vowel 12 senātus: long vowel 13 quibus: two syllables 14 quisque: two syllables; two consonants

2 1 haec: only syllable 2 tempestātem: long vowel 3 ambulāvissem: two consonants 4 hiemis: penult. cannot hold it 5 negotium: penult. cannot hold it 6 īnsidiaes: penult. cannot hold it 7 īnsidiārum: long vowel 8 proelium: penult. cannot hold it 9 amantium: penult. cannot hold it 10 pāx: only syllable 11 equitātum: penult. cannot hold it 12 quem: only one syllable 13 aliquis: penult. cannot hold it 14 speciēs: penult. cannot hold it 15 passūs: only two syllables; two consonants 16 vallēs: two syllables; two consonants 17 removeō: penult. cannot hold it 18 rēdeo: penult. cannot hold it 19 Rōmānus: long vowel 20 interficiō: penult. cannot hold it

UNIT 2

1 1 1, we hasten 2 4, they come 3 1, I build 4 1, they stand 5 2, you (sg.) remain 6 1, s/he, it lives 7 2, you (pl.) move 8 1, you (pl.) carry 9 2, they have 10 2, I hold 11 2, s/he, it is silent 12 4, s/he, it feels 13 1, I think 14 1, we love 15 1, s/he, it desires 16 2, they are strong 17 2, they are afraid 18 4, you (sg.) open 19 2, s/he, it extends 20 2, we burn 21 2, you (pl.) shine 22 4, s/he, it sleeps 23 1, they excite 24 1, I prepare 25 4, you (pl.) fortify 26 1, we save 27 1, they give 28 2, I see 29 4, they know 30 1, you (sg.) think 31 2, we laugh 32 2, s/he, it is eager 33 2, you (sg.) frighten 34 2, you (pl.) harm 35 1, s/he, it fights 36 2, s/he, it owes 37 1, you (sg.) announce 38 2, I respond 39 1, you (pl.) ask 40 2, they warn 41 1, s/he, it stands 42 1, we command 43 1, I deny 44 1, s/he, it calls 45 4, they hear 46 4, you (sg.) do not know 47 2, we teach 48 2, you (pl.) order 49 2, they beware 50 2, you (pl.) weep
2 1 properō 2 venit 3 aedificāmus 4 stat 5 manētis 6 habitant 7 movēs 8 portās 9 habet 10 tenēmus 11 tacent 12 sentiunt 13 cōgitāmus 14 amō 15 optant 16 valet 17 timet 18 aperītis 19 patent 20 ārdeō 21 fulgēs 22 dormiunt 23 excitat 24 parāmus 25 mūnīs 26 servō 27 dat 28 vidēmus 29 scit 30 putātis 31 rīdēo 32 student 33 terrētis 34 nocēs 35 pugnant 36 dēbent 37 nūntiātis 38 respondēmus 39 rogās 40 monet 41 stant 42 imperō 43 negāmus 44 vocant 45 audit 46 nescītis 47 doceō 48 iūbēs 49 cavet 50 flēs

3 1 optāmus 2 dormiunt 3 rīdēs 4 ārdēs 5 portāmus 6 venēmus 7 nocēt 8 patet 9 terreō 10 valent 11 monet 12 scimus 13 rogātis 14 nēgō 15 docent 16 studet 17 amās 18 pugnāmus 19 fulget 20 putō 21 invenit 22 timeō 23 audiunt 24 properāmus 25 stat 26 nūntiat 27 aperītis 28 flent 29 imperat 30 nescimus

4 1 B 2 K 3 I 4 L 5 D 6 M 7 F 8 A 9 G 10 C 11 E 12 J

UNIT 3


2 1 petitis 2 fugiunt 3 tāngō 4 dācis 5 pellimus 6 iacit 7 bibunt 8 emitis 9 claudis 10 premō 11 tegimus 12 frangunt 13 canit 14 nōscitis 15 legis 16 currimus 17 cadis 18 geritis 19 mittit 20 agunt 21 pātimō 22 relinquitis 23 vivit 24 rēgunt 25 facimus 26 dicimus 27 canimus 28 cernis 29 crēditis 30 scribo 31 crēdit 32 dēscendimus 33 trahunt 34 discēditis 35 cōgit 36 iungis 37 incipit 38 vertimus 39 crēdit 40 dēscendimus 41 interficimus 42 quaeris 43 intellegis 44 discīt 45 cupit

3 1 dīvidis 2 dīcō 3 mittitis 4 quaerimus 5 pōnunt 6 bibit 7 legit 8 cupit 9 emimus 10 frangunt 11 interfic 12 scribimus 13 crēditis 14 discēdunt 15 incipit 16 regit 17 claudit 18 facimus 19 canō 20 crēscunt 21 dūcis
UNIT 4

1 1 laetitiae joys 2 noxa (the) harm; noxārum of (the) harms; noxīs to a/the harm 3 fēmina to a/the woman; fēminā by a/the woman 4 amīcitīs by (the) friendships 5 lacrimae of (the) tear 6 agricolās (the) farmers 7 deam (the) goddess 8 vītis by means of (the) lives 9 īnsidiae to a/the ambush; īnsidiā by means of a/the ambush 10 cōpiās of (the) mobs; turbīs to (the) crowds

2 fēmina, aquilam 2 fēminae, fābulam, puellīs 3 rēgīna, īnsulae, servās 4 nauta, aquilam, sagittā 5 turba, laetitiā 6 agricolae, prōvinciae, terram, tenebrārum 7 turba, fābulam, filiae, rēgīnae 8 dea, corōnam, victōriās, īncolae, patriae 9 rīpa, viam 10 linguā, poēta fābulam 11 agricolae, filiae, pugnam 12 noxam, īnsulae 13 fortūnā, filia, deae, silvam 14 dea, īnsulae, umbram, portae 16 īra, deae, memoriam 17 poena, aquam, nymphīs 18 stellīs, lūnā, praeda, villā 19 animam, ōrae 20 fābulam, inīuriae, litterīs

3 [Note that a(n) (e.g. a boy) or nothing (e.g. boys, wine) can be replaced by the in the following translations (e.g. the boy, the boys, the wine) and vice versa]
1 A woman carries the crown of the queen into the country house. or A woman carries the crown for the queen into the country house. 2 The inhabitants of the islands sing because of joy. 3 The daughters of the sailor and poet do not remain in darkness but they run into the forest. 4 I do not find the loot because of the shadow of the moon. 5 An eagle sees dinner in the water. 6 We believe the report of the inhabitants about the goddess. 7 When are you (pl.) coming to the island? 8 The arrows of the nymphs fall onto the riverbank. 9 We love the stories of the country and of the island. 10 Inhabitants fear the anger of the goddess.

4 1 Fēminae corōnās rēgānārum in villīs portant. 2 Incola īnsulae laetitiās canat. 3 Filia nautārum poētārumque nōn in tenebrīs manet sed in silvās currīt. 4 Umbrīs lūnārum praeda nōn inveniō. 5 Aquilae in aquīs cēnās vident. 6 Fāmīs īncolae dē dei crēdimus. 7 Quandō ad īnsulās venītis? 8 Sagitta nymphae in rīpās cadit. 9 Fābulam patriārum īnsulārumque amāmus. 10 Incola īrās deārum timet.

5 1 A 2 L 3 K 4 D 5 H 6 G 7 B 8 E 9 I 10 J 11 F 12 C

6 aurās (Unit 2, sentence 6); fossae (3, 4); concordiā (3, 5); ancorās (3, 11)
REVIEW OF UNITS 1–4

A 1 intexunt – the penult because it is followed by x; 2 infandum – the penult because it is followed by two consonants; 3 lacrimis – the antepenult because the penult is light; 4 procul – penult; 5 viribus – antepenult because the penult is light; 6 delicta – penult because it has a long vowel; 7 reditu – antepenult because the penult is light; 8 notissima – antepenult because the penult is light; 9 suspecta – penult because it is followed by two consonants; 10 eccce – penult; 11 amor – penult; 12 refugit – penult because it has a long vowel; 13 comitante – penult because it is followed by two consonants; 14 obtulerat – antepenult because the penult is light; 15 insonuere – penult because it has a long vowel

B 1 we love 2 they love 3 you teach 4 s/he, it comes 5 veniunt 6 docetis

C 1 you seize 2 you lead 3 they lead 4 capiunt 5 ducas 6 capimus

D 1 genitive plural 2 accusative singular 3 genitive singular, dative singular, nominative plural 4 dative plural, ablative plural 5 accusative plural 6 ablative singular

UNIT 5

1 1 deus god; deorum of the gods 2 somnium dream 3 auris to objects made of gold; by means of objects made of gold 4 velorum of the sails 5 templae temples 6 mundi to the world; by the world 7 ventus wind; venturum of the winds 8 campae plains 9 somnis to the sleeps; by the sleep 10 caeli of heaven 11 pontes seas 12 antro to the cave; by the cave

2 [Note that a(n) (e.g. a boy) or nothing (e.g. boys, wine) can be replaced by the in the following translations (e.g. the boy, the boys, the wine) and vice versa]
1 They throw rocks against the walls of iron. 2 Branches remain in the streets. 3 The son of a sailor announces a story about the garden of the gods and goddesses. or 4 The son announces a story about the garden of the gods and goddesses to the sailor. 4 A sailor always brings food to the horses. or 5 A sailor always brings food by means of the horses. 5 Today we drink wine! 6 Bulls move into the field of a farmer and they stand there. 7 The wolf of the forest kills a bull and a horse. 8 The queen gives food to the crowds and the men divide the food for (their) sons and daughters. 9 The people of the island live in caves and sleep there. 10 The boys of the allies of the island hear the words of the goddess and they are not afraid. 11 A servant flees out of the country house of the master and he hastens to the land of the neighbours. 12 When the inhabitants of the island see the barbarians, the women and men take weapons
and swords of iron. 13 The eyes and hair of the god shine, the arms of the god are strong, and the mind of the god burns. 14 S/he holds hatred of barbarians in memory. 15 The queen gives tasks to the crowd. 16 The people build walls around the camp by means of slaves. 17 The barbarian wages war against the inhabitants of the town. 18 The crowd seeks the aid of the gods because of the danger of war. 19 Because of (his) help the people give a reward to the boy. 20 A number of children sing for the queen in the place.

3 1 Portās mūrī finitimī claudunt. 2 Līberī odiō barbarōrum flent. 3 Ventus valet et pontus nautās ad īnsulam portat. 4 Fīlius deae aquilam in caelō invenit et taurum gladiō interficit. 5 Rēgīna imperat vulgum ad antra currere. 6 Crēdimus verbīs nymphae. 7 Somnus animum capit quandō vir bibit. 8 Vēlīs et auxiliō rēgīnae populus discēdit. 9 Poēta fābulās līberīs oppidī scribit. 10 Īncolae mūrum ferrī aurīque aedificant circum agrum.

4 1 C 2 L 3 B 4 A 5 I 6 G 7 F 8 H 9 K 10 D 11 E 12 J

5 asȳlum (Unit 2, sentence 1); dōna (2, 4); iussa and verba (2, 6); deum (3, 3); ōtiō (3, 9); volturiōs (3, 10); pontō (3, 12); cōnsōlandō and minandō (4, 1); gaudium (4, 2); stabula (4, 4); tēlōrum (4, 7); armōrum and studio (4, 8)

Reading: Hercules and the Serpents I

Hercules, son of Alcmena, lives in Greece. He is a strong man. Juno, the queen of the gods, hates Alcmena. She wants to kill the song of Alcmena. The goddess therefore sends two serpents into the home of Alcmena. In the middle of the night they come into the bedroom, where Hercules sleeps. Alcmena does not place (her) son in bed, but in a big shield.

UNIT 6

1 1 magna 2 magnō 3 magnam 4 magnīs 5 magnī (gen. sg. and nom. pl.), magnō (dat. sg.) 6 magnī 7 magnus 8 magnās 9 magnōrum 10 magnā 11 magnō 12 magnum

2 [Note that a(n) (e.g. a boy) or nothing (e.g. boys, wine) can be replaced by the in the following translations (e.g. the boy, the boys, the wine) and vice versa] 1 We find high sails in the deep sea. 2 The friends build wide and high walls for the people of the town. 3 Why do you come (sg.) to the small country house? 4 The man seizes by means of (his) long arms eagles for the crowd. 5 Many barbarians run onto the island and they fight against the prosperous inhabitants. 6 A sole boy places a long branch onto the altar of the beautiful goddess. 7 The tired sailors seek firm land. 8 The black hair of the daughter of
the queen does not move by means of the slow wind of the sky. 9 The poet writes about a white bull and a radiant nymph. 10 Stars do not shine in the dark cave. 11 People grow a public garden. 12 The teacher teaches about ancient people. 13 The neighbours buy new, strong horses. 14 The great town extends into the good field. 15 An enemy kills the queen by means of bad wine. 16 S/he seizes the free girls by means of treachery and sells (them) to barbarians. 17 Boys and girls do not know the unknown and blind poet of many letters. 18 S/he sends to the famous queen black horses, gold, and radiant iron. 19 The joyful people sing with joy in the holy and pure place to the worthy master. 20 The wrathful goddess makes wild winds, a rough sea, high waves, and black darkness for the wretched sailors.

Reading: **Hercules and the Serpents II**

The serpents secretly approach the shield. Then Hercules moves the shield, because he comes out of sleep. Hercules is not afraid. He holds the serpents with (his) small hands and squeezes (their) necks. The boy is stronger than animals. He kills them.
oppidum invenīs. 19 Populī bonī causā/grātiā canunt līberī iūcundī. 20 Cum armīs terram lātam regimus.

2 1 N 2 A 3 G 4 J 5 T 6 E 7 H 8 L 9 M 10 D 11 F 12 S 13 B 14 I 15 V 16 Y 17 K 18 C 19 U 20 O 21 W 22 P 23 R 24 X 25 Q

3 eōrum – their; eius – his; ēi – to him; finibus – borders; erat – there was; potentissimōs – most powerful; firmissimōs – most stable; tēs – three

Reading: Hercules and the Serpents III

Alcmena, the mother of the boy, hears the noise and arouses (her) husband from sleep. He snatches a sword and hastens into the bedroom. When he enters, he sees Hercules. The boy is laughing and shows with joyful eyes the dead serpents. This is the first story of the Greek poets about the life of Hercules.

UNIT 8

1 1 Manner 2 Price 3 Cause 4 Respect 5 Manner 6 Respect 7 Means 8 Price 9 Description 10 Respect 11 Description 12 Cause 13 Means 14 Manner 15 Respect 16 Respect 17 Description 18 Cause 19 Means 20 Price

2 1 G 2 H 3 E 4 L 5 I 6 J 7 A 8 B 9 C 10 K 11 F 12 D

3 -e

Reading: Hercules Kills His Family I

The young Hercules defends Thebes from enemies. The king of the town adorns Hercules with great rewards. He gives his own daughter to him in marriage. Hercules leads a happy life with (his) wife, but after a few years he suddenly falls into anger. With (his) own hands he kills (his) three sons.

UNIT 9

1 1 nūntiābās 2 cavēbat 3 nocēbant 4 dīcēbam 5 audiēbāmus 6 crēscēbant 7 cupiēbam 8 tenēbās 9 habitābat 10 tegēbātis 11 bibēbāmus 12 vidēbās 13 venībant 14 properābās 15 flēbātis 16 pugnābat 17 currēbant 18 gerēbātis 19 interficiēbātis 20 vīvēbam 21 canēbātis 22 fugiēbāmus 23 terrēbam 24 scriebat 25 dābās 26 tacēbam 27 amābam 28 claudēbam 29 crēdēbātis 30 sciēbātis

2 1 They were fortifying the high walls of the camp. 2 The small children of the men and women were afraid because of the anger of the queen. 3 A fortunate
inhabitant was finding gold in the field. 4 On account of the bad and wild battle of the neighbours we were leaving our towns. 5 Onto the holy altar a worthy servant girl was placing a branch of the forest. 6 When were you (pl.) reading joyful stories of the unknown poet? 7 Between the tired horse and small wolf a great bull was standing. 8 Enemies were sailing to our country. We were afraid. 9 Out of the beautiful garden we were calling the slow master. 10 You (sg.) were hastening into the cave. What were you (sg.) doing there?

3 1 Mundum deus regēbat. 2 Post pugnam magister līberorum flēbat. 3 Auxilium dominī petēbat. 4 Poēta ignōtus scribēbat epístulās amīcās novāsque populō dīgnō. 5 Agrum lātum et asperum agricolae emēbāmus.

4 1 C 2 L 3 K 4 J 5 D 6 B 7 I 8 H 9 E 10 F 11 A 12 G

5 miscēbant (Unit 4, sentence 2); tendēbant (4, 5); dūcēbās (4, 10)

Reading: *Hercules Kills His Family II*

*Note*  From Units 9 through 12 the translations of the past tense verbs are clunky since the student has not yet learned the perfect tense.

On account of this most cruel deed Hercules was living with great sadness. He wanted to atone for this greatest fault. He decided therefore to go to the famous Delphic oracle. There in the temple the wife of Apollo, Pythia by name, gave advice to men. Apollo moreover was teaching (his) wife. Pythia knew the wishes of Apollo and was announcing them to men.

**UNIT 10**

1 1 you (sg.) will teach 2 I will be strong 3 s/he, it will burn 4 they prepare 5 you (pl.) will depart 6 s/he, it will think 7 we will desire 8 I will decide 9 s/he, it falls 10 s/he, it will flee 11 s/he, it will sing 12 they will believe 13 you (pl.) harm 14 we will drink 15 s/he, it will turn 16 they depart 17 s/he, it will save 18 we will laugh 19 s/he, it will fight 20 you (pl.) will feel 21 we will see 22 s/he, it will run 23 s/he, it will save 24 we will close 25 you (sg.) will buy 26 I will think

2 4 parābunt 9 cadet 13 nocēbitis 16 discēdēnt 22 capiet 25 monēbit

3 1 We will find the gold of the queen. 2 Today I know. Tomorrow I will not know. 3 After the war we will build a new wall of iron. 4 When will you (sg.) run through the forests into the waves of the water? 5 The gods will give a cruel punishment to the hostile inhabitants out of anger. 6 Great branches press against
the country house. 7 Because of the injury of the eyes the unfriendly poet will never see. 8 I will fight with the enemies, and I alone will rule the island with great joy. 9 The sailors are afraid because of the darkness of the deep sea. 10 Before the dinner the daughters of the man will feed the horses on the riverbank.

Reading: Hercules Kills His Family III

Pythia was hearing the words of Hercules. When the sad man was making (his) story, Pythia was saying: “You will arrive to the city of Tiryns. There you will remain and you will seek Eurystheus, king of the town. When you will find him, he will order you. You will atone for your fault.”

When Hercules was hearing the words of Pythia, he hastened to the city. There he was making himself servant to Eurystheus. He was serving Eurystheus for twelve years and was accomplishing twelve tasks. He was only atoning for the greatest and most cruel fault by the tasks.

REVIEW OF UNITS 5–10

A 1 nominative singular, accusative singular 2 genitive singular, nominative plural 3 genitive plural 4 dative plural, ablative plural 5 nominative singular 6 nominative plural, accusative plural

B 1 meum 2 meum 3 meās 4 meōrum 5 meīs 6 meae

C trāns, ante, prō, cum, causā, sine

D 1 means 2 means and cause 3 manner and price

E 1 you were teaching 2 s/he, it will seize 3 you will love 4 we were coming 5 they will lead 6 amābat 7 capiēbant 8 docēbitis 9 dūcēbam 10 venīēmus

UNIT 11

1 1 possunt 2 sunt, possunt 3 potēs 4 sum 5 est 6 potest 7 estis 8 possunt 9 possunt 10 sunt
Reading: The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 1

A terrifying lion was rendering dangerous a field near the town Nemea. Eurystheus was ordering Hercules to kill this wild animal. The brave man was entering the forests. In these forests the lion was living. In vain for hours Hercules was searching the wild beast. Finally after hours the monster appeared. It was walking on a narrow path. Hercules wanted to wound the wild beast out of the dense forest, but he was not catching it. The arrows of Hercules were falling onto the ground, because the monster indeed had rough skin.

UNIT 12

1 1 verb (remembering) 2 description 3 value 4 material 5 objective [could be subjective if *his family* is doing the loving] 6 partitive; verb (accusing) 7 verb (forgetting) 8 characteristic 9 material 10 verb (accusing) 11 subjective 12 partitive 13 description 14 value 15 characteristic 16 objective [could be subjective if the *city* is doing the attacking] 17 verb (forgetting) 18 verb (accusing) 19 possession 20 subjective

2 1 C 2 J 3 H 4 A 5 E 6 F 7 L 8 I 9 B 10 K 11 G 12 D

3 1 -is 2 -ērum

Reading: The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 2

The lion with anger was now observing the man behind the trees. Quickly it was running to him. The wild animal wanted to tear the man to pieces. Hercules was throwing arrows into the ground. With a great (piece of) wood, which he always carried, he wanted to dash the head of the wild animal to pieces. But in vain! Then the strongest man was seizing the neck and was squeezing (it). The lion was opening (its) great mouth, which wanted to devour Hercules. But the hands of Hercules were strong, and the wild animal fell onto the earth dead.

UNIT 13

1 1 rēxistis 2 crēdīdimus 3 amāvit 4 nōvī 5 cōnsuēvītis 6 docuērunt 7 cēpit 8 meministī 9 ōdimus 10 parāvītis 11 vīdit 12 portāvī 13 audīvītī 14 negāvērunt 15 cecinimus
2 1 Why do you (pl.) not remember the ancient battles? You will learn. 2 The new ally bought a horse for a good price. 3 The sailors set sail for the new land. 4 They killed the unknown blind man with a sword of iron. 5 We sang to the god of the deep sea. 6 I left, because I feared. 7 I felt a cruel danger in my sleep. 8 Why did you (pl.) remain with the inhabitants in the cave of great darkness? 9 The inhabitants placed onto the altar the golden crown of the beautiful queen. 10 They are accustomed to build a high wall between gardens and fields.

3 1 Quandō deum ventōrum vidistī? 2 Cūr fābulae poētae caecī nōn meministīs? 3 Litterās servī nōn lēgit vulgus. 4 Ad rīpam laetitīā cucurrimus. 5 Dē oppidō per portās mūrōrum altōrum equī dēscendērunt.

4 1 G 2 I 3 A 4 E 5 B 6 J 7 H 8 K 9 F 10 C 11 D 12 L

5 1 coepērunt (Unit 2, sentence 11); ōnstituistī (2, 12); vidiī (4, 4); disiēcit (5, 6); ēvertit (5, 6); coepit (6, 6); fuit (6, 11); commīsērunt (7, 20); ēmit (8, 5); vendidī (8, 9); mūtāvit (8, 12); fēcistī (10, 12); fuit (12, 2)

Reading: *The Nemean Lion (Labor I), part 3*

Hercules now carried the wild beast back into the town on (his) shoulders. Many men and women inhabited the town.

They were greatly rejoicing, when they saw Hercules with the monster. Now they were free from the dangerous monster. They gave great rewards to Hercules. Hercules moreover carried the skin of the wild animal for a close friend.

**UNIT 14**

1 1 valuerās 2 posuerit 3 properāverō 4 incēperātis 5 ōderint 6 habuerit 7 aperuerant 8 mūnīverimus 9 dīxerāmus 10 fulserant 11 responderitis 12 nōverāmus 13 reifiquerat 14 patuerit 15 cecinerat 16 coēgerint

2 1 After the boys had come, we were happy. 2 When will you (sg.) have built a new country house? 3 Good food had been on the broad altar of the cave. 4 The inhabitants of the island remembered the fields within the fatherland. 5 They will not sail when a bad wind will have begun through the waves of the deep sea. 6 Why had you (pl.) written a joyful letter to the queen? She will not respond. 7 The slow and tired wolves had not given harm to our neighbours. 8 The son of the female slave and of the male slave will have seen the long hair of the beautiful and free girl. 9 The crowd had fought against the barbarians, when they killed the horses of the queen by means of swords of iron. 10 In the ancient world many poets had been blind and unknown.
Reading: *The Lernean Hydra (Labor II), part 1*

A short time afterwards Eurystheus ordered Hercules to kill the Hydra. It was another monster, Hydra by name.

It was devastating the fields around Lerna. The monster had nine mortal heads. The tenth head moreover was immortal. Hercules went by means of a chariot to the place, where Hydra was living. The brave man aroused the monster with arrows. It approached Hercules with terrifying sounds. He was hardly scared. He snatched the neck with (his) left hand and cut away the nine heads one after another. But he was working in vain. Two new heads grew in the place of each head.

**UNIT 15**

1. [the may be dropped in all of these answers] 1 guests 2 by means of peace 3 for the flowers; by means of flowers 4 sea 5 names 6 women 7 for the head 8 of the star 9 of praises 10 for the laws; by means of laws 11 journeys 12 of feet 13 work 14 for the herd 15 by the age 16 for brothers; by means of brothers 17 courage 18 of time 19 air 20 air 21 chest 22 for the wound 23 of the fathers 24 mouths 25 weather 26 horsemen 27 of the sun 28 legion 29 lion 30 by means of a seed

2. 1 hospes, hospitem 2 pācibus 3 flōrī, flōre 4 aequora 5 nōmen 6 mulier, mulierem 7 capitibus 8 sīderum 9 laudis 10 lēgī, lēge 11 iter 12 pēdis 13 opera 14 gregibus 15 aetātibus 16 frātrī, frātre 17 virtūtēs 18 temporum 19 āerēs 20 āerēs 21 pectora 22 vulneribus 23 patris 24 ēs 25 tempestātēs 26 eques 27 sōlum 28 legiōnēs 29 leōnēs 30 sēminibus

3. 1 No one had seen my sister and tall brothers. 2 The leader placed tired soldiers into the legion because of the Roman customs. 3 Farmers flee from the countryside because of the smell of the cattle. 4 Enemies fought with our soldiers. After the war our men were seeking aid from the sisters of the king and from the queen. 5 We will throw the blind poet into a dark prison because of crimes against the honour of the state. 6 The author of letters and of books made a great work for the state and the common people. 7 A happy boy found seeds of flowers under a high tree. 8 Why does the work of men break the body? 9 The dogs of the soothsayer drink the blood of a bull. 10 I will say the rumour to my mother, because I do not understand. 11 The son of the neighbours hates the crimes of the enemy. 12 The guardians of the altar stand before the soothsayer. 13 The smell of flowers will extend into the small country house. 14 The farmer
bought a new herd for a bull. 15 Because of the custom of the holy island men on journeys sleep in the country house of the king and queen. 16 The sun of the world shines and it removes the darkness from the lands. 17 Happy are men and dogs, because the father of the gods will not make storms. 18 Lions found bulls and killed (them). 19 We give praise to the queen, because she is beautiful. 20 No one of the soldiers was able to see the chief of the legion.

4 1 Soror mātris meae hodiē venit. 2 Gladiōs ferrī in equīs equītēs portāre possunt. 3 Lēge rēx virum interficit propter/ob scelus sanguinis. 4 Cūr clārum legiōnem rēgis boni nōn vidētis? 5 Quandō cibum multīs canibus faciēs? 6 Meus pater materque tua, quod nōn in carcere sunt. 7 Virtūte vincere poterimus. 8 Custōdēs carceris hominibus/virīs cibum dant. 9 Tempestās ad oppida insulae crās veniet.

5 1 C 2 L 3 K 4 B 5 E 6 H 7 F 8 D 9 I 10 A 11 G 12 J

Reading: The Lernean Hydra (Labor II), part 2

Hercules asked, “What should I do? In this way I will never be able to kill the wild animal.” Therefore with his free hand he lit a fire and scorched the nine heads with a burning wood. He was able to do this because they were mortal. But the brave man was not able to kill the tenth head. Therefore he buried it in the ground and placed a large stone upon it. Hercules now had to kill also the body of the monster. He divided into two parts the wild animal with (his) swords. The blood flew from the body of the monster just like a river. Hercules immersed (his) arrows. The poison, which was in the blood, rendered wounds deadly. This was the second labor, which Hercules completed.
UNIT 16

1  [the may be dropped in all of these answers] 1 dentibus to the teeth 2 cīvī to the citizen; cīve by the citizen 3 vātis of the soothsayer 4 adulēscēntēs young men/women 5 vestī for the clothing; veste by means of the clothing 6 cor heart 7 serpentis of the snake 8 maribus to the seas, by means of the seas 9 annēs streams; annium of the streams 10 noctibus by the nights 11 famēs hunger; hunger; famem hunger 12 urbs city; urbem city 13 avis of the bird 14 animal 15 sortibus for luck

2  1 We throw fish into the stream and river. 2 The offspring of the king of the gods will make peace and he will build great cities. 3 Between the parts of the town there is a long and high bridge. 4 After they had asked for aid from the neighbours, they found (their) sons and daughter. 5 The foreign enemies will come down from the mountains and they will begin to drag our ships to the sea. 6 High walls will touch the clouds. 7 The farmers give the sheep new honey because of hunger. 8 The man was warning the allies by means of red fire. 9 The enemies frighten by fire the inhabitants of the island. 10 The blind poet remembers the death of (his) mother. 11 We do not know the borders of the world. 12 My mind is in my head. 13 We have bodies, ears, teeth, mouths, hair, hearts, and eyes. 14 Animals are standing in the stream, because they seek fish. 15 The guardians of the holy altar begin the fire with branches. 16 We will build a bridge across the river. 17 Water from clouds covers the world, and people are happy. 18 Because a bad serpent had killed the boy, we sought aid from the king. 19 S/he, it fell from the new bridge into the small stream. 20 We are not able to see the stars because of the many clouds.

3  1 Animālia sacra semper adulēscēntēs sorte/fortūnā inveniunt. 2 Hostēs pontem novum frēgērunt. 3 Quandō vīnum prōlibus rēgīnae dabis? 4 Nāvēs parvāe candidāque in pontō vēla dabant. 5 Fame vēnimus in silvam et piscēs in annibus invēnimus. 6 Moenibus barbarī villam meōrum parentum oppugnāre nōn poterant. 7 Nōn vendimus vestem mellī. 8 Vātēs verba cīvibus dīcunt prō igne ferō. 9 Rūmōrēs dē montibus alīs sub aequoribus audivērunt. 10 Cūr circum orbem terrārum/mundum cucurreritis?

4  1 I 2 A 3 B 4 D 5 G 6 H 7 F 8 E 9 J 10 L 11 K 12 C

Reading: The Fight with the Centaurs (Labor III), part 1

While Hercules was making a journey to Arcadia, he came into the region of the Centaurs. One of the Centaurs, Pholus by name, kindly welcomed Hercules and prepared dinner for him. After dinner he asked (for) wine from Pholus, because he loved wine. The Centaurs deposited a jar of the best wine into a cave.

“Whose wine is this?” Hercules asked.

Pholus said, “It is the wine of the Centaurs.”
“Can I drink it?” he asked.
“You cannot. The Centaurs will kill me, if I will have opened a jar.”

UNIT 17

1 1 aēres, fortēs, recentēs 2 aēris, fortis, recentis 3 [nom. pl.] aēres, fortēs, recentēs; [gen. sg.] aēris, fortis, recentis 4 aērī, fortī, recentī 5 aēcrum, fortum, recentum 7 aērī, fortī, recentī 8 aēcrī, fortī, recentīs 9 aēria, fortia, recentia 10 [gen. sg.] aēris, fortis, recentis; [dat. sg.] aērī, fortī, recentīs 11 aēcrī, fortī, recentīs 12 aēcrum, fortum, recentum 13 aēcrum, fortibus, recentibus 14 aēcrōrum, fortībus, recentībus 15 aēcrēm, fortēm, recentēm 16 aērī, fortī, recentī 17 aērī, fortī, recentīs 18 aēcrēm, fortī, recentīs 20 aēcrēs, fortēs, recentēs 21 aēcrēs, fortēs, recentēs

2 1 Happy men see the sun and they leave the sad cave. 2 A wise bird will find sweet honey in a small tree. 3 After s/he had killed the mother of a noble man, the disgraceful one ran out of the town. 4 On account of the fierce and cruel war the parents of many strong soldiers weep. 5 You (pl.) are not able to stand in a crowded country house. 6 The swift horse was an animal of the immortal god, (who was) the king of all men and animals. 7 Why does the rich master not give to the poor people? 8 They were able to build huge country houses for the happy (people) of the city. 9 The children of the towns of the island always give honour to our old (people). 10 S/he wrote serious books about the unhappy things of the queen and king. 11 After a short year, I will not rule and I will depart. 12 The light wind did not move the ships of the unhappy sailors. 13 A great number of our allies will carry aid and will build new walls because of the recent battle. 14 I do not drink mild wine, but my dogs drink (it). 15 The humble slave does work, but he does not desire money. He desires a new, free life. 16 All (people) of the city will be present there. 17 The blind, wise, and old poet teaches the children of the town. 18 We fear a swift and strong wind in a cruel storm. 19 Who does not remember an immortal life? 20 The smell of a mild flower was filling the country house or A mild scent of flower was filling the country house.

3 1 Finēs castrōrum dominī crūdelēs claudunt. 2 Deus immortālis hominēs/ virōs omnēs orbis terrārum/mundī fecit. 3 Hominēs/virē turpēs feminaeque frequentēs per viās cucurram. 4 Pinguēs ovēs et dulce vīnum vulgō dīvīserit vātēs. 5 Auctor dulcibus dē odōribus flōrum horī parvī scribet. 6 Oculīs aēris pugnāvērunt animālia. 7 Servī tristēs senēisque auxilium sapientī ā vāte petent. 8 Vīta mīlitēs est brevis. Sagitta per cor potest interficere. 9 Līberī laeti semper canunt pulchrum cum avibus in rīpā. 10 Vestrae patriae nōbilī pugnābitis et nostrum rēgem humilem servābitis.

4 1 E 2 H 3 K 4 B 5 D 6 J 7 A 8 G 9 F 10 L 11 I 12 C
Reading: *The Fight with the Centaurs (Labor III), part 2*

Hercules did not fear the Centaurs. He opened the jar and he drank most (of it). The Centaurs sensed the smell. From all sides they gathered to the cave. There they saw Hercules drinking with a wide (i.e. opened) mouth. Thus angered they made an attack on the strong man. They did not know that Hercules had deadly arrows. Therefore all, whom Hercules wounded with arrows, ended (their) life wretchedly. The remaining Centaurs, when they had seen the death of friends, turned (their) backs and sought safety by flight. Pholus came out of the cave. Whether by chance or by plan of the gods he had wounded (his) foot lightly by an arrow. Immediately he felt a serious pain and he fell dead on the ground. Hercules, who had fled far after the remaining Centaurs, with great sadness found the dead Pholus. With many tears he buried the body of Pholus.

**REVIEW OF UNITS 11–17**

A  1 possunt 2 poterās 3 sumus 4 poteritis 5 est 6 poterō 7 erō 8 erant

B  1 objective 2 partitive and material 3 with a certain verb and value

C  1 vēnerant 2 docuī 3 cēpit 4 amāveris 5 dūxītis 6 cēperimus 7 amāverant 8 docuīstis 9 vēnerat 10 dūxorō

D  1 animālia, flūmina, mīlitēs, noctēs 2 animālī, flūmine, mīlite, nocte 3 animālium, flūminum, mīlītum, noctium 4 animal, flūmen, mīlitem, noctem

E  1 forte 2 fortēm 3 fortēs 4 fortium 5 fortibus 6 fortis (gen. sg.), fortī (dat. sg.), fortēs (nom. pl.)

**UNIT 18**

1  1 adjective 2 ethical; adjective 3 purpose 4 reference 5 adjective 6 possession 7 reference 8 ethical 9 purpose 10 reference 11 possession 12 adjective 13 purpose; reference 14 purpose 15 adjective

2  1 B 2 H 3 K 4 F 5 E 6 I 7 L 8 C 9 D 10 J 11 A 12 G

Reading: *The Running Stag (Labor IV)*

Eurystheus announced the fourth task. There was a stag, whose head had golden horns. The animal had the greatest speed, because (its) feet were strong. Hercules had found the tracks of the stag. When it saw Hercules, he jumped and ran. Hercules ran after the animal in vain. They ran for months and months, but
Hercules was not able to catch the stag. Finally after a year the stag sat, because it was tired. Hercules seized the body and gave it to the king.

UNIT 19

1 1 s/he, it is being killed 2 I am being ordered 3 they will be led 4 I was being heard 5 s/he, it will be ruled 6 you (pl.) will be fed 7 I will be bought 8 it was being fortified 9 you (pl.) are being seen 10 they are being done 11 they are being excited 12 we were being turned 13 I am desired 14 s/he, it is being given 15 it will be drunk 16 you (sg.) will be called 17 you (pl.) will be fed 18 it was being fortified 19 we are being desired 20 they were being closed 21 we will be dragged

2 1 interficiuntur 2 iubemur 3 ducetur 4 audiēbāmur 5 regentur 6 pāscēris 7 emēmur 8 mūniēbantur 9 vidēris 10 facitur 11 excitātur 12 vertēbar 13 optāmur 14 dantur 15 bibentur 16 vocābimini 17 iungēbāminī 18 scribuntur 19 cupior 20 claudēbātur 21 trahar

3 1 Strong words are being written by a famous and wise poet. 2 A great rock was being thrown by the soldiers against the walls of the city of the cruel (people). 3 When will dinner be prepared today? 4 The man will be found in the shadows of the black cave. 5 The smell of the flowers of the garden was being carried through the air by the wind. 6 New walls are being built by the old and young. 7 I will not be seized by my enemies for the sake of sweet peace. 8 A small bird is now seen in the high tree. 9 Sweet honey will be given to the states by the prosperous and rich kings. 10 A war will not be begun today, because the leaders will be able to make peace. 11 The left arm of my ally is broken by an arrow. 12 A new ship was being thrown against the waves by strong storms. 13 Soldiers will be ordered by the leaders to fight. 14 A wild bull will be killed by the arrows of an inhabitant. 15 We are forced to flee. 16 The sheep in the fields of the mountain were being divided by the farmers. 17 The words of the author will be sung by the daughters and sons. 18 The country house was being moved by the winds of the storm. 19 You will be touched by the words of the author and poet. 20 The wolf is being dragged out of our fields, because it was killing sheep.

4 1 Ā puerīs epistulae mittēbantur. 2 Rēgnum nymphārum ā deō aequorum regēbātur. 3 Ovis alba ab agricolā interficiētur. 4 Terra umbrā nūbium tegēbātur. 5 Tristibus ab incolīs auxilium petētur. 6 Perīculum urbīs nōn vidētur ā līberīs. 7 Cibus bonus capiētur crūdelibus ab hostibus/inimīcīs. 8 Laetīs ā virīs/hominibus fēminisque vīnum dulce bibētur. 9 Aurum candidum in terrā avibus in āere vidēbātur. 10 Ĉūr pellēminī ex agrīs vestrīs?

5 1 A 2 C 3 H 4 I 5 F 6 K 7 B 8 E 9 G 10 L 11 D 12 J
implentur (Unit 3, sentence 4); tenēbātur (4, 8); vibrātur (4, 11); compelluntur (5, 1); tangitur (8, 4); nārrābitur (10, 3); dīcēris (10, 11); terrētur (11, 10); dētinēbantur (15, 4); sequitur (16, 2); reperiētur (17, 7); accipitur (18, 11).

Sequitur is the deponent verb.

Reading: The Augean Stables (Labor V), part 1

Eurystheus ordered now the fifth difficult labor. At that time there was a king, Augeas by name, who had three thousand cows. The animals were enclosed in a stable of enormous size. The stable was of terrible dirtiness because it was not being cleaned. Eurystheus sent Hercules to King Augeas. The king did not know Hercules. The reason of (his) arrival was not known by the king.

“What will you give, if the stable will be cleaned within twenty hours?” asked Hercules.

The king did not believe. The task will not be completed so quickly.

“Well,” he said, “I will give a tenth part of all the cows, which are in the stable.”
Reading: *The Augean Stables (Labor V), part 2*

Hercules undertook the task, although he knew it to be difficult. He saw the stable, which had never been cleaned. Indeed not far off from the royal home a river of copious water flowed. Hercules at first with much effort led a ditch to the wall of the stable. Then he broke through the wall and let the water into the stable. There was a horrible noise. The water was rushing within the walls with incredible speed and was carrying all the filth. Hercules, just like a chief, was standing by as a victor after war. He was greatly rejoicing because he had completed the difficult task according to plan against the opinion of all. But he was not happy, because the king gave nothing, which had been promised.

UNIT 21

1 1 Fīlia illīus virī/hominis eum amat. 2 Fīlia eius vēnerat. 3 Haec fīlia illōrum virōrum/hominum laeta est. 4 Hanc fīliam hōrum virōrum/hominum sciō/nōvī. 5 Quandō fīliam eōrum/eārum vīdistī? 6 Fortūnā/sorte suā aurum inventēnt. 7 Fortūnā/sorte illā bellum gerēmus. 8 Hōrum omnium meministīs. 9 Rēx ille hanc īnsulam rēxīt. 10 Illī dēi gladiōs eīs dant.

2 1 The moon shines and its light covers this land. 2 Those sailors were on that deep sea. 3 His father is silent because he sleeps. 4 We will drink that wine of their (f.) garden. 5 This reward was given to this soothsayer by that god. 6 This blind poet had written that letter to her/him. 7 When did you (pl.) find these places? 8 The country houses of this town will be built by them by means of those rocks. 9 Their (m.) children ran in the forest and there they sang to those animals. 10 That one (m.) was killed by this arrow. 11 He says his own story to (his) son. 12 He says his (someone else’s) story to (his) son. 13 Through these high gates those soldiers of that city will come. 14 This smell of those flowers is in the air. 15 That soldier will have been killed by his own wounds. 16 Those ones (m.) had not been able to sail because of those serious storms. 17 In that crowded city there is neither food nor water. 18 The queen gave to his wife this sweet honey. 19 His sister reads the books of those famous authors. 20 They do not hear their own words.

3 1 T 2 S 3 F 4 J 5 L 6 O 7 E 8 G 9 B 10 I 11 H 12 Q 13 R 14 P 15 N 16 D 17 K 18 M 19 C 20 A

Reading: *The Stymphalian Birds (Labor VI), part 1*

After a few days Hercules made a journey to the town Stymphalus. Birds were living in a neighboring lake. They were rendering the entire region dangerous. These birds were horrible. They were able to pierce through all things with (their) sharp beaks. Many men were living in that region. Many had been killed
by them. Hercules came to the lake. He had to conquer great difficulty. Indeed the lake consisted not of water, but of mud. The birds were sitting in high trees in the middle of the lake.

UNIT 22

1 Ipse istō leōne interfactus erat. 2 Nautae eīdem vīdērunt rēgīnam ipsam. 3 In aētāte equītum ipsī rēgēs pugnāvērunt eōsdem hostēs/inimīcōs. 4 Bibēmus vīnum īnsulae istīus. 5 Īēdem ā fīnitimīs vīsa erit. 6 Quandō sēnsistī ventum ipsum? 7 In idem aurum iaciēbam meōs oculōs. 8 Templum istud aedīficārur inter nostrōs agrōs. 9 Virī/hominēs caecī eōsdem ībrōs poētārum eōrundem lēgerant. 10 Istī deī immortālēs nihil agricolīs pauperibus dant.

2 1 The wicked deeds of that damn man make (his) mother unhappy. 2 I myself loves children. 3 A new storm had forced the men and animals to flee away from the same towns. 4 What does that damn king order? 5 The same farmers killed a herd of sheep, but it does not belong to them. 6 The girl herself of that wretched sailor was similar to that damn woman of yours. 7 We are not able to go into the city itself because of the walls. 8 We heard nothing through the long night from that high mountain itself. 9 Soldiers will have set sail with the loot of that damn province of yours. 10 All night the boy has the same dream. 11 We are tired, because we ran around the wide garden of the master. 12 The crowd of barbarians was near the gate itself. 13 The same letter is being written by him himself. 14 The same moon shone in the time of the ancients, it itself shines today, and it itself will shine for our children. 15 The happy girls saw the same sword of iron of the strong soldier. 16 Because of the strong wind that branch of that damn tree of yours broke my head. 17 You ought to sing to the crowd yourself (nom. fem. sg.). 18 We did not remember the words of the author himself. 19 The beautiful nymph herself will move those rocks of the mountain for the tired sailors. 20 Our allies had carried the bulls into the same caves.

3 1 D 2 G 3 I 4 M 5 T 6 Q 7 O 8 H 9 S 10 E 11 F 12 J 13 C 14 P 15 L 16 K 17 A 18 B 19 R 20 N

Reading: The Stymphalian Birds (Labor VI), part 2

Hercules examined the place. “How am I able to drive away the birds? They sit in those trees. How am I able to approach them?” A goddess touched him at the back. She was standing by and was holding two rattles. The rattles had been made by Vulcan out of bronze. She handed them to Hercules, then she vanished. Hercules now climbed a nearby hill and made a fierce noise with the
rattles. The birds, thoroughly scared, flew away. Hercules pierced a great part of the birds with arrows. The citizens of that city were freed from danger. They brought great thanks to Hercules.

**REVIEW OF UNITS 18–22**

**A** 1 purpose 2 possession and reference 3 ethical

**B** 1 he will have been taught 2 s/he, it was being heard 3 we will be seized 4 they (f.) have been loved 5 they are being led 6 docti erātis 7 audiar 8 capta erunt 9 amābāris 10 dūcēmur

**C** 1 Hic hanc amat. Puer ipse mātrem ipsum amat. 2 Hic huic hās mittit. Poēta ipse rēgīnae ipsī litterās ipsās mittit. *Or if rēgīnae is taken as genitive:* Hic huius hās mittit. Poēta ipse rēgīna ipsīs litterās ipsās mittit. 3 Hīs hunc interficiam. Sagittīs ipsīs virum ipsum interficiam. 4 Huic hī sunt. Rēgī ipsī līberī ipsī sunt.

**UNIT 23**

1 The sailors were wishing to set sail, but the ships were small and the storm was strong. 2 What do you (sg.) prefer? To go onto the island with the mothers of the children or to remain in the country house? 3 We carried away the cruel enemies from the town. 4 You (pl.) go now to the field. There you will feed the animals. 5 The poet, ally of the king, will carry words of the queen to the happy inhabitants. 6 S/he wanted to fight with the neighbours concerning the borders, because he had nothing. 7 This sword was being carried by a solider into that damn battle. 8 They wanted to place a branch of peace onto the altar of the temple, because the gods frightened them in a dream. 9 The country house of the wise man is overtaken by the weapons of the wrathful mob. 10 Food has been collected in the wide forest by the tired son. 11 What does s/he have? S/he wants to offer a fat sheep to the queen. 12 The strong will go into the crowded city, because there they will have good things. 13 In that age the wise had preferred to write, but they did not say words for all people. 14 Why is your daughter carried across the bridge? Because she is not able to run. 15 I had found a beautiful crown. I wanted to give it to the servant of the queen. 16 Where are they going to and what are they carrying? They run to the bank of the stream, because they wish to catch fish by means of branches. 17 The light of the radiant moon and stars had shone onto the water, but the black clouds carried the light away. 18 Even the eyes of men will want to see light in the caves, but they will not be able. 19 The friends of the poet prefer to hear about ancient times. 20 They carry iron and trees into the city for the temple of the goddess.
2 1 Quandō verba īllōrum poētārum clārōrum canere volēs? 2 Odōre sanguinis non terrēre māluit frāter meus canēs īūcundōs. 3 Ventus odōrem flōrum fert trāns agrōs lātōs. 4 Nōluerat bellum gerere cīvitās contrā finitimōs suōs. 5 Cūr nōluistis manēre hīc apud villam, postquam vīnum biberātis? 6 Prosperus fīlius eius in tenebrīs equīs ferīs nōn praeterībātur. 7 Lacrimīs meīs cibum aquamque sapientī ā dēa quaererē volēs ( . . . sapientem deam rogāre . . . ). 8 Propter/ob somnium meī sorōris, īvimus/iimus ad patriam nostrī patris. 9 Cūr fert gladium? Eō pācem nōn invenīre potest. 10 Mūrum novum/moenia nova villae aedificāre nōlent, quod eum/ea fortis tempestās franget.

3 1 D 2 H 3 A 4 J 5 L 6 K 7 G 8 B 9 C 10 F 11 E 12 I

Reading: The Cretan Bull (Labor VII), part I

Hercules had to complete another labor. Eurystheus now sent him to Crete, where a wild bull was laying waste to the island. Hercules had to carry the bull alive to Greece. He climbed (his) ship and immediately loosened (it), for the wind was greatly suitable. When the ship was approaching the island, a huge storm almost carried the end of his life. A great terror occupied the spirits of sailors. They deposited all hope of safety. But Hercules alone was not frightened. He did not know fear, because he had conquered so many difficulties.

UNIT 24

1 1 Which of the two books will you (sg.) read? 2 The whole world praised a single woman, a beautiful and noble queen. 3 My friend had denied any word in front of the king. There he stood and was silent. 4 Another camp was built by a single man. 5 Some slaves see some masters, other slaves see other masters. 6 You (pl.) will do either one. 7 The farmers seek in all the mountain the wine of the other god. 8 No one will make a long journey, because wild storms harmed the whole town of the neighbours. 9 After the ships had left from the island, the light of neither was seen and neither was found. 10 The ears of these wise animals hear all men. No man knows this. 11 Out of fear of hunger we ask aid from each goddess. 12 By means of which of the harms will the inhabitants of that island be forced to flee? 13 In the bad forest I saw a single beautiful nymph. 14 One soldier was killed by one sword, another soldier was killed by another. 15 You (sg. m.) alone are worthy of money. 16 The branches of this huge tree had fallen onto the land by all the strong winds of the entire world. 17 They do not wish to go into any temple, because they have no money. 18 Which of the fat bulls did the man prepare for his blind ally? 19 You (pl.) hasten to the other city, where their happy friends are. 20 Citizens know the other name of that (damn) city (of yours).
Reading: The Cretan Bull (Labor VII), part 2

The sea was tranquil, when the sailors drove the ship safe to land. Hercules immediately hastened to the king of Crete and taught him the reason of (his) arrival.

He promised the king, “I will free the island from danger.”

The king was affected by great joy. After all had been prepared, Hercules hastened to that region, where the monster was living. He saw the bull. He ran to it and snatched its horns. The monster was strong, but the hands of Hercules held it firmly. Thus Hercules dragged the bull with great effort to the ship and happy, he returned to Greece with the booty.

UNIT 25

Key to exercises

1 Utrum scelerum iste (m.)/ista (f.) fecit? 2 Erat nūllus sanguis post scelus. 3 Diēs unus puĕrī in flūmen cecidit. 4 Volunt ildī nautae circum tōtum mundum/orbem terrārum nāvigāre. 5 Virtūs unus pācem ferre potest. 6 Inimīcī/hostēs neutrum oppidum cēperant. 7 Quod sōlī sunt, timent hī liberī. 8 Ipse légīt nūllās litterās gravēs. 9 Aliī ad oppidum vēnērunt, aliī ad īnsulam īvērunt/iērunt. 10 Utram amphoram bibēs?

3 1 B 2 A 3 I 4 F 5 E 6 K 7 J 8 C 9 H 10 D 11 G 12 L

UNIT 25


2 1 The son, whose father was king, sees the great fields. 2 The slaves killed their master with stones, which they had found in the fields. 3 The poet, whom every one praises, says that that man is bad. 4 The wounds, by which the soldiers had been killed, were serious. 5 The consuls, who have power, write laws for the people. 6 The strong storm, which the farmers saw, was terrifying the sailors. 7 Why do the stars, which sit in the sky, shine? 8 The prison of darkness, into which our enemy has been thrown, is silent. 9 The children, whose father had set sail, were alone. 10 The barbarians carry a battle, which excites the animals through the whole forest.

3 1 Fīliī, quōrum patrēs rēgēs fuērunt, agrum magnum vident. 2 Servus dominōs suōs saxō interfēcit, quod in agrō invēnērat. 3 Poētae, quōs omnis laudat, dīcunt
After Hercules returned from the island Crete, he was sent to Thrace. The task, which was remaining there for him, was again greatly dangerous. Indeed he had to lead back horses of King Diomedes into this own country. These horses were wild: they were eating the flesh of men. Diomedes threw all foreigners, who entered into his kingdom, to the horses. Therefore Eurystheus said to himself, “Hercules will also be a victim of the horses.” The brave man ran into Thrace with great speed. He wanted to complete the task as quickly as possible.

UNIT 26

1 1 Whose wine is this? 2 Did you (pl.) come with him? 3 What kind of weapons had been found? 4 How many soldiers do not wish to fight against the barbarians? 5 From where did the sad boys run? Where are they now? 6 Why do you (sg.) give a reward and praise to the parents? 7 To where does the river go? 8 Why do they drink the blood of that sheep? 9 When will the huge gates of the city be closed? 10 The poet, who had written the many letters is wise, isn’t he? 11 Who is not able to hear the words of the holy gods? 12 How will he build new walls? 13 In which dream had he seen the place, in whose temple there was gold and money? 14 How many books will the wretched author have written? 15 Why was I not able to sing to the crowd? 16 Whose mother do you (pl.) know? 17 Does the sun shine today? 18 Why are you (pl.) tired? When will you (pl.) sleep? 19 Will you (sg.) remain with the ones in the town or will you (pl.) go with the others into the city? 20 For what did he sell the wide field?

fulget sōl per nūbēs obscūrās? 8 Quot fābulās vulgō poēta leget? 9 In cuius memoriā hīc aedificābātur rēgnum pācis? 10 Quō nauta vēla dabat?

3 1 K 2 J 3 F 4 C 5 G 6 L 7 I 8 H 9 A 10 D 11 B 12 E

Reading: The Man-Eating Horses of Diomedes (Labor VIII), part 2

Hercules met the king, but Hercules was not able to persuade him with kind words. Then the strong man was moved by anger. He killed the king and threw him to the horses. In this way the cruel king died in the same manner, by which he himself had killed many innocent men. Hercules did not remain long in Thrace. Those who inhabited that region, wanted to create him king. But Hercules was not able to undertake a kingdom, for he had to hand the horses to Eurystheus. Without delay he loosened from the harbor and after a little while he put the safe horses onto the shore of Agos.

UNIT 27

1 1 sē, nostram 2 ego, nōs, tuum 3 vōs, mihi, meum 4 ego, mihi 5 nostrum 6 tū, mē, tū, mē 7 sibi, suum, nōs 8 vestra, nōs vōbīs, 9 tū, tē, mihi 10 nōs, vestrā 11 sibi, nostrū 12 tū, ego, nōs 13 nōbīs, nostram 14 nōs, tē, nostrā 15 suam/suās

2 1 eī/eae 7 is, ipsī/ipsae, eī 10 is 11 eī/eae 13 is, eius 14 ipsum/ipsam 15 is, eōrum/eārum

3 1 You (sg.) were teaching many of us. 2 S/he found him/herself in our temple. 3 The queen will give us a punishment. 4 The poet had written about love of you (pl.) in a joyful letter. 5 My sister saw me, but I was not seen by my brother. 6 Young people were not able to hear themselves but they had been able to hear you. 7 You (pl.) always order us. 8 We announce to you (sg.) the words of that (damn) king (of yours). 9 Why do you (sg.)/are you (sg.) calling me and my sister? 10 The sun sees itself in the river.

4 1 F 2 J 3 C 4 I 5 D 6 H 7 E 8 G 9 K 10 L 11 A 12 B

Reading: The Battle with the Amazons (Labor IX), part 1

A race of Amazons consisted entirely of women. They feared no one. They even dared to engage in battle with men. Hippolyta, their queen, had a most famous belt which she had received from Mars. The daughter of King Eurystheus vigorously desired to possess this belt. Eurystheus therefore sent Hercules with soldiers to Asia, where the Amazons lived. “Queen,” Hercules said, “You don’t know me, do you? From where I have come? Hercules is my name. My master, King Eurystheus, wants your belt. I will carry it with me.”
Hippolyta, because she was an Amazon, responded gently: “Now I know the reason of your arrival. If I am able to make the daughter of your master happy, I will willingly do it.”

UNIT 28

1 1 Bring the food here! 2 Tell the words of this queen to the king! 3 Do not fear the gods! 4 Doors, be opened! 5 Sing and be happy! 6 Hold the wild wolf! 7 Be ruled by me! 8 Cover the sun with trees! 9 Body be excited, because I am still now tired! 10 See the huge rocks, which have fallen from the high mountain!

2 1a. Be present faithful ones! 1b. Come, come into Bethlehem! 1c. See the born king of angels! 2a. Come, come Emmanuel! 2b. Free the captive Israel, who groans in exile! 2c. Rejoice, rejoice Emmanuel! 2d. Dispel the clouds of night and the fearful dark of night! 2e. Open up the heavenly kingdoms! 2f. Make a safe path above! 2g. And close the ways below!

3 1 C 2 E 3 B 4 K 5 D 6 G 7 J 8 H 9 A 10 L 11 F 12 I

4 īte (Unit 4, sentence 12); frangite (4, 12); cave (5, 5); pellite (5, 9); redde (6, 2); face (15, 1); quaerite (19, 3); pulsāte (19, 3); date (20, 3); cōnsulite (27, 4). Face is an archaic form of expected fac.

Reading: The Battle with the Amazons (Labor IX), part 2

When she heard this, Juno assumed the form of the Amazons and aroused them against the Greeks. “You are wise! Do not believe these men! They have come to you, because they wish to seize your queen and to lead her with them into Greece.”

The women were stirred up and immediately they formed a battle line and made an attack on the Greeks. Hercules asked himself, “Why are the Amazons doing this? I ought to resist.”

They bitterly fought for a long time. When the queen had been seized, the Amazons sought safety by flight. Hercules said, “Soldiers, we, Greeks, never fight against women. Now, because this battle has ended, we will dare freedom to all the captives.” All the Greeks sent the Amazons to (their) homes.

REVIEW OF UNITS 23–28

A 1 ībimus 2 ferunt 3 mālēbam 4 fertur 5 nōn vult 6 vīs

B 1 sōlōrum 2 sōlīs 3 solī (dative), solo (ablative) 4 solīus 5 solum 6 solīus (genitive sg.), solī (dative sg.), solae (nominative pl.)
UNIT 29

1 Boy, where is your brother? 2 Soldiers, come to me! 3 My slave, why have you done nothing? 4 His/her country house is in the country. 5 We will build a new temple in Rome. 6 Girls, carry to me the sweet food, which I wish. 7 At Carthage one is able to see many stars, which shine in the heavens. 8 Brothers, drive the herd of sheep onto the boat! 9 We seek aid in peace and in war from the beautiful goddess. 10 We will come to the servant of the god, who is in Rhodes. 11 We found an eagle, which was on the ground. 12 We have wide fields in Athens. 13 Ally, why do you not want me? 14 At my home (my) friends had remained. 15 Lead the barbarians into the prison, men! 16 Touch, son, the gate of the holy temple! 17 Poet, write a new book! 18 Hear me, animals! 19 Crowded towns are found on Rhodes. 20 Wife, because of danger go with me to that cave!

2 K 2 G 3 C 4 A 5 H 6 L 7 J 8 I 9 B 10 D 11 F 12 E

Reading: Cacus Steals the Oxen (Labor X), part 1

Hercules drove the cows of Geryon through Spain and Italy. He came with them to the Tiber. “I am tired from the journey,” he said. “Peaceful days are given to me. Here I will remain.” Not too far at all from a river there was a cave in which Cacus, a horrible monster, lived. He blew fire from (his) mouth. This monster snatched away four cows, while Hercules was sleeping. He dragged them by (their) tails into the cave. The next day as soon as he was stirred from sleep, Hercules noticed the theft. Hercules was not able to know (i.e. find) their tracks. He sought the cows in vain, but he was deceived by false tracks.

UNIT 30

1 exclamation 2 adverbial 3 extent of space 4 limit of motion 5 Greek 6 duration of time 7 duration of time 8 adverbial 9 Greek 10 exclamation 11 limit of motion 12 extent of space 13 adverbial 14 Greek 15 extent of space
**Reading: Cacus Steals the Oxen (Labor X), part 2**

When he decided to leave, one of his own cows began to bellow. Suddenly four (cows) enclosed in a cave replied the bellow. Thus Hercules knew the place, where the four cows were being hidden. He, angered very much, ran to the cave. But he was not able to enter, because a huge rock was placed in the entrance by Cacus. “What must I do?” he asked himself. After a short time he moved the rock away with great strength. Because the cave was filled with smoke, Hercules was not able to see. Thus he rushed into the cave and snatched the neck of the monster. That one was not able to free himself by any means and soon dead he fell to the ground.

**UNIT 31**

1  1 Whatever you (sg.) see, do not be afraid! 2 Someone gave me something, but I do not know who. 3 Each one has someone, who loves him. 4 No one had money. The queen alone was rich. 5 I drank nothing. I will drink anything. 6 Those ones run from each thing/Those ones run from each one. 7 Whoever sees that (damn) man, she knows him to be a god. 8 I send nothing to nobody, because a certain (man) found my money. 9 The country houses in Carthage have been thrown into light by the moon, because there was no cloud in the sky. Each (man) was blind. 10 I know no one, who lives here. 11 Each thing frightens my friend. 12 My friend was frightened by something. 13 Divide each thing and give something to each! 14 Beware of the dog! Beware of all animals! Beware of each! 15 Someone wrote me a letter. Whoever wrote it, that one is a good author. 16 When the enemies fight us, no one is strong. 17 Why do you (sg.) do nothing? You ought to do something for us. 18 When will a certain woman, who had been seized by the barbarians come? 19 Who did this? We will ask a certain man, who was here. 20 Whatever, which serves as a harm, we are able to kill.

2  1 Aliquis illam portam clausit. 2 Quidquam nōn poterāmus cernere. 3 Interficite quidcumque vidētis! 4 Aliquis altā dē arbore cecidit. 5 Quaedam meī meminit. 6 Quandō aliquid tangit, quidue in aurum vertit. 7 Rēx lupum cuique dīvisit. 8 Quidcumque vīnum bonum facit, dēbēmus discere. 9 Nēmō animālia pāverat. 10 Nihil/nīl vīdīt, quandō mēcum hīc stetit.

3  1 I 2 L 3 K 4 E 5 C 6 D 7 H 8 B 9 F 10 A 11 G 12 J

**Reading: The Golden Apples of Hesperides (Labor XI), part 1**

Hercules was sent by Eurystheus to the farthest part of the world. He had to snatch away the golden apples of the Hesperides. He did not know the garden,
in which the apples were being guarded. He made a journey through many lands and came to the place where Atlas was holding the Earth on (his) shoulder. This place was near to the ocean. “I seek the garden,” Hercules said, “I traversed many lands, beloved old man. I have come to this place because I will be helped by you. You indeed alone are able to help me. I know that you to be the father of the Hesperides. Willingly they will do whatever you ask from them, because the Hesperides are your daughters. Help me!”

“Friend,” the old man responds, “it is true that the Hesperides are my daughters. I alone am a mortal who knows the place of the garden. Willingly I will help you, if you will hold the Earth for me.”

UNIT 32

1 1 aliquī 2 quandam 3 quamcumque 4 ülla 5 quemque 6 nūllum 7 quibusdam 8 aliquam 9 quōcumque
10 aliquā, alicuius

2 1 quidquam, sibi 2 tū, quae, sē 3 eam 4 vōs 5 nōs, quī, nōs 6 mē 7 quī, sē 8 eī/ea 9 is, tibi

3 1 A certain storm will come. 2 Do you (pl.) know any dangers, which the enemies will make for us? 3 Each rock fell from some mountain. 4 A certain gate had been opened by an unhappy slave. 5 The old do not desire any immortal dream. 6 Common words were being heard in some city. 7 I have no honours. 8 The boy of some woman ran away from the holy temple. 9 Whichever wine you (sg.) drink, I will drink it also. 10 Will you (sg.) bring a reward to him or will you (sg.) lead him into some cave of darkness? 11 Do not weep! There is no harm. 12 Whichever serious wicked deeds those ones did, we ought not be afraid. 13 The king of each city rules with joy. 14 We do not believe certain ancient ones. 15 Some wretched man broke my right arm. 16 S/he does not wish to remain here, because s/he does not have any good fortune. 17 Do you (pl.) send whichever bull to them, which had been seized by you? 18 Certain neighbours sell their own swords, because there is no battle. 19 Each citizen of each city ought to read this book of that author. 20 When will some soldiers save us?

4 1 G 2 E 3 C 4 A 5 K 6 F 7 D 8 I 9 H 10 J 11 L 12 B

Reading: The Golden Apples of Hesperides (Labor XI), part 2

Hercules heard this and was affected with great joy. Not in vain had he come to the farthest part of the world.

“Place the Earth,” he said, “on my shoulder! Hasten to your daughters! Do not return without the apples!” After Hercules had said these (things), Atlas placed the Earth on his shoulder. The old man immediately ran to the garden.
He persuaded (his) daughters. But the girls do not want to violate the will of the goddess Juno. They resisted for a long time. But at last they handed the apples to (their) father. Now Atlas returned without delay to Hercules, because he wanted to hand the apples over to him. With great joy Hercules saw the old man. But Hercules was a cunning man. “Beloved old man,” he said, “I will willingly hold the Earth. But hold it for a short time. I want to place something on my shoulder, because the Earth is so heavy.”

Hercules handed the Earth to Atlas. The old man held it. Hercules seized the apples and with a happy face said: “Old man, I thank you. Unfortunately, I have to return to Greece. Farewell!”

UNIT 33

1 1 present, active, masculine/feminine, plural, nominative/accusative 2 perfect participle, passive, masculine, singular, genitive or perfect participle, passive, masculine, plural, nominative 3 future, active, masculine, singular, accusative or future, active, neuter, singular, nominative/accusative 4 perfect participle, passive, masculine/neuter, plural, genitive or perfect participle, passive, feminine, singular, accusative 5 perfect participle, passive, masculine/neuter, singular, ablative 6 future, active, feminine, singular, genitive/dative or future, active, feminine, plural, nominative 7 perfect participle, passive, feminine, singular, ablative 8 present, active, masculine/feminine/neuter, singular, ablative 9 perfect participle, passive, feminine, singular, accusative 10 present, active, masculine/feminine, plural, nominative

flente (8) cannot be used with a noun. It would need to be flentī when modifying a noun.

2 1 amātūrō frātre 2 mānsā nāvī 3 trāctum caput 4 iactōrum sēminum 5 flentēs viri 6 ventae tempestātēs 7 rēctārum urbium 8 fulgentia sīdera 9 scrīptō rūmōre 10 fugientem ovem

3 1 Who, drinking the wine, carried nothing to us? 2 I see a man holding his own daughter. 3 The storm which is going to come frightens us. 4 The god, praised by the citizens, will give all things to them. 5 The soldiers had stood there, closing the gate of the walls. 6 The famous poet was killed by a broken branch. 7 The author will write the words, which had been heard. 8 The laughing friend begins this work. 9 The boys are about to run into the cave. 10 The queens will give aid to the seeking girl.

4 1 L 2 I 3 B 4 E 5 F 6 K 7 J 8 H 9 C 10 A 11 G 12 D

Reading: Bringing Cerberus out of the Underworld (Labor XII), part 1

After the golden apples had been returned to Eurystheus, only one of the twelve labors remained. The king greatly feared Hercules. Therefore he wanted to send
him to a dangerous place. It was the place from which he will never able to return. He ordered him to drag the dog Cerberus from Hades into the light. This task was very difficult. No one had been able to complete it. With Mercury as leader Hercules descended into Hades. At first he came to the bank of the river Styx, by which the kingdom of Pluto was confined. It was necessary to cross it. There was no bridge on this river. The shadows of the dead were led across by Charon to the further bank by a boat. This old man was so terrified by Hercules. In no way did he want to lead Hercules across. But Hercules forced him to do it.

UNIT 34

1 (Any of the subordinate conjunctions mentioned in the unit could be used for these answers. To simplify things, only one was chosen for each of the following). 1 The words of the poet having been heard, the boys were happy. 2 Since the storm was serious, the ship was carried to the island. 3 The queen seeing the danger, the soldiers destroyed her temple. 4 Because the rocks are not small, a rampart is being built today. 5 Although s/he was crying, there was nothing, which we had been able to do. 6 The book having been written for the people, all the nobles praise the author. 7 Since time is short, you (pl.) ought to live in peace. 8 With unknown people running, the danger of wolves is announced. 9 The enemies going with their own king through the streets of the land, the people of the towns and cities were silent. 10 Since I am strong, my boys are not afraid of darkness. 11 Someone will lead us to the altar of the temple, because aid was sought from the gods. 12 The loot of that farmer found, you (sg.) will have fields. 13 We believe whatever the king tells us, our town being beautiful and not crowded. 14 The task done, we are home now. 15 The children fleeing from the lion, the feet had been heard in the peace of the night. 16 Since there is no light in the prison, s/he will be able to see no one. 17 What will be done, with the worthy sons of the fatherland having been killed? 18 They drinking good wine, everyone fell into sleep. 19 Soldiers fortifying the camp, we will be saved. 20 I desire many things with a new year having been begun.

2 1 Portā apertā mīlitēs in villam ōvērunt/iērunt. 2 Quandō ad oppidum miserum ōbitis, nūllō ībi vīvente? 3 Cibō ā eīus mātērē parātō, frātrēs rōmōs portābant. 4 Ignī fortī/valentī dormiunt. 5 Incolīs īnsulae sagittīs interfectīs, est nēmō, quī animalia servāre potest. 6 Eīus nōmine malō, nēmō quidquam eī dīcit. 7 Ovibus rūrī stantibus, nūbēs nigrae caelum implērunt. 8 Nostrā patriā pulchṛa, multī virī/hominēs hūc venire volunt. 9 Crūdēlibus īnsidiās imperātīs, legiō nōluit manēre apud inimīcōs/hostēs. 10 Odōre sanguinis sēnsō, parentēs hortum nōn relinquunt.

3 1 A 2 E 3 G 4 L 5 J 6 I 7 O 8 B 9 M 10 C 11 N 12 F 13 H 14 D 15 K
Reading: *Bringing Cerberus out of the Underworld (Labor XII), part 2*

Thus led to the farther [i.e. other] bank Hercules hastened to the seat of Pluto himself. The king, standing at the gates of the city prohibited the strong man. Hercules was not able to enter the kingdom by the will of the king. But wounded by an arrow of Hercules, he changed his opinion and gladly heard the words of Hercules. He found Cerberus and asked Pluto, “Is it permitted for me to carry Cerberus away?” The king of the dead responded, “I will allow this willingly, but after your labor Cerberus will be led back to Hades.” Hercules agreed. Then he dragged Cerberus, seized not without great danger, to the city of Eurystheus. When the monster was seen, a great fear seized the soul of the king. Hercules asked with many tears, “Do not keep the monster in the city.” Hercules therefore led Cerberus back to Hades. Thus against the opinion of all, the twelve labors, which Eurystheus had commanded, were completed within twelve years. Hercules, freed from the servitude of the king, returned to Thebes with great joy. Now he lived there without cares.

**REVIEW OF UNITS 29–34**

**A**
1 Rōmae 2 Carthāgine ~ Carthāginī 3 domī

**B**
1 filīi 2 rēx 3 deus 4 socī

**C**
1 extent of space, duration of time 2 Greek 3 exclamation, adverbial

**D**

**E**
1 amantem 2 audīta 3 dūctūrō 4 Capta

**F**
1 virō audītō 2 adulēscēntibus castra aedificantibus 3 antrō flammīs vīsō

**UNIT 35**

1 1 Whom do you (pl.) believe? 2 Children do not want to please their parents. 3 The god of storms harmed the ships of some sailors. 4 The senate will put a young man in command of the legion. 5 Whoever serves a master, that one is not free. 6 The mother favours not one of her own daughters. 7 The king having been killed by arrows, the queen had not able to forgive the man standing there.
8 The cruel neighbours ordered me to carry gold into the town. 9 They ordered me to remain in the country. 10 The unhappy man envied his happy wife. 11 Spare us serious work! 12 The wild dog does not obey the soldiers. 13 The king of barbarians does not trust us, because we killed his friend. 14 No one will run to help the poet, who was writing beautiful words to each (person). 15 You (pl.) ought to resist their battle with your hands themselves. 16 The horns of the bull will harm no one who will be in the field. 17 The soothsayer ordered them to carry gifts to the goddesses. 18 Who was at the head of all the gods? 19 S/he prefers war to immortal peace. 20 We threw fire into the enemy camp.

2 1 Quando nymphae pontī nautīs favēbunt? 2 Rēx nōbīs imperat pārēre mātribus nōstrīs. 3 Corōnam ipsam laetitiae antepōnit. 4 Ea nautīs ventōs fortēs indulgēbit. 5 Deī virō/hominī, quī bona mundī/orbī terrārum facit, favēnt. 6 Puerī invīdērunt agricolae fīliō, quī praemium invēnerat. 7 Quem imperātor vulgō populi praeficēt? 8 Serviam nōn tibi, quī omnia ā mē cēpīstī. 9 Quīcumque pācī studet, ille eam inveniet. 10 Cūr alīcui fidītis, quem nōn scĪtis?

Reading: Hercules and His Friend Admetus, part 1

The brave man making a journey to Thessaly, Hercules entered the house of the king Admetus on a certain day. The king and the guest were good friends. With Ademetus welcoming him with hospitality, the strong man noticed that the king was greatly sad.

“What has happened?”

“Nothing,” Admetus responded. “A certain stranger woman has died.”

“I do not wish to disturb you, friend. I will spend the night in the house of another friend. I give you the greatest thanks.”

“Not in this way, dear friend. I will never allow you to do this. You will remain with me. In the last part of the villa our grief will disturb you minimally.”

Because Hercules did not want to offend (his) good friend, he remained in his house.

UNIT 36

1 1 nt. nom/acc. sg. cornū 2 dat. and abl. pl. of all genders domībus, fidēbus, cornībus, senātībus, diēbus, faciēbus 3 dat. and abl. pl. of all genders domībus, fidēbus, cornībus, senātībus, diēbus, faciēbus 4 fem. or masc. nom. sg. domus, fidēs, senātus, diēs, faciēs; gen. sg. of all genders domūs, fideī, cornūs, senātūs, diēī, faciēī 5 fem. acc. pl. domūs, fidēs, faciēs 6 masc. and nt. dat. sg. cornū, senātū, diē; masc. and nt. abl. sg. cornū, senātū, diē 7 masc. acc. pl. senātūs, diēs 8 fem. and masc. nom. or acc. pl. domūs, fidēs, senātūs, diēs, faciēs 9 nt.
nom. and acc. sg. cornū 10 gen. pl. all genders domuum, fidērum, cornuum, senātuum, diērum, faciērum

2 1 The armies were led out of the camp to some town by the king. 2 The arrows leaving from his bow will begin an attack. 3 Which animals live in this lake? 4 No one was able to do anything, after the queen had been filled by grief. 5 The noble and blind poet will have written the beautiful verses. 6 The senate and kings fight against each other and they will always fight. 7 The trust of the people having been broken, the queen no longer has power. 8 Each remained the entire day in prison. 9 Seize the horns of that wild bull! 10 I will carry by means of my small hands the gift to the temple of the soothsayer. 11 Did you (sg.) see the face of that damn queen, to whom we will give no honour? 12 The farmer does not wish to feed the herd and flock today. 13 Every house of the crowded city had been destroyed by the army. 14 His knees are stronger than mine. 15 The walls having been built, hope of safety will grow. 16 Why is an attack being carried by the hostile barbarians against you? 17 Hasten home, since the thing has begun. 18 Clouds have many faces. 19 The poet writing verses, the nymph gives aid to the author. 20 The eagle of the gods obeys the senate.

3 1 Arcūī mīlitis fortis invideram. 2 Nostrī lūctūs meminisse nōlūmus. 3 Fidēs eius erat similis speī illūs. 4 Exercitus proximus contrā miserum senātum imperium fēcit. 5 Ea fortis genibus est. 6 Ante bellum pecūs inter domum oppidumque stetērant. 7 Sōle altō in caelō fulgente diēs longī sunt. 8 Quae cumque rēs invenīs, eās tenēre dēbēs. 9 Cornibus taurī tāctīs animal cucurrit. 10 Lacus ille manibus sōlīs aedificātus est.

4 1 B 2 E 3 I 4 G 5 D 6 F 7 L 8 K 9 A 10 C 11 J 12 H

Reading: Hercules and His Friend Admetus, part 2

He was sitting alone at the table. The servants had to work diligently. Their guest had consumed a great abundance of food and wine. Suddenly Hercules began to sing. The servants, thoroughly terrified, looked at the singing guest.

“What are you looking at? Come and drink with me!”
“We are not able to drink,” the servants said.
“Why are you not able to drink?,” Hercules asked. “Because a stranger woman has died?”
“Stranger woman? Who said this to you?”
“Admetus himself. The king is not able to be a liar.”
“It is so. But Admetus wanted to be hospitable.”
“Why are you all so sad? Respond! Tell me. Who is that woman?”
“Alcestis, our queen.”
UNIT 37

1. difficilīus 2 longīōribus 3 terrīliōribus 4 breviōr 5 cōpiōsiōrēs 6 pulchriōrum 7 iūcundīōrēs 8 sacriōrēs; sacriōrīs 9 fēlīcior, fēlīcius 10 sapientīōrum

2. 1 The more serious the war, the more frightened are the people of the town. 2 A rather strong man will not be seized and killed. 3 The rather huge animals ran through the forest at night. 4 The legions of the army are more gentle than rocks in the street. 5 Our neighbours are more friendly than yours (pl.). 6 A journey having been made we drank rather sweet wine, which the wife of the host had given to us. 7 Whose face seems prettier? 8 I saw a rather white cloud, which shone in the sky. 9 This field of this farmer is not wider than that field of that man. 10 The tired men having been seized by sleep, the legion had no power. 11 The more famous the poet is, the more beautiful the verses he writes. 12 Wolves are swifter than dogs. 13 The king of the island wants to build walls higher than the temple by means of the hands of the people. 14 Around the river the more cruel goddess seizes horses, which drink water near the riverbank. 15 The city is more crowded than the countryside. 16 Food, which was made by an old man, was sweeter than the food of a young man. 17 We are eager for the flesh of a wilder and fatter animal. 18 The more serious the wounds of the sailor, the more unhappy are his friends. 19 We had to read the rather beautiful works of the more famous author. 20 Is the goddess more cruel than that one?

3. 1 Quandō accipiēs vītam līberiōrem? 2 Nūbēs nigrior est . . . quam tenebrae antrī or tenebrīs antrī. 3 Quantō miserior es, tantō īnfēlicior est vīta, quam dūcis. Lūctus omnīs mundī/orbīs terrārum tībi erit. 4 Vēlīs datīs nautae animal sacrius petēbant. 5 Quī custōs pēriculīm crūdēliūs inveniet? 6 Lentiōrēs mīlitēs in castrīs mānsērunt. 7 Ovem pīnguiōrem optāmus/cupīmus. 8 Bracchia sua fortīōra sunt . . . quam suum caput or suō capite. 9 Undae multō asperiōrēs arborēs īnsulae et rāmōs eōrum dēlēbunt. 10 Gladium fortīōrem antepōnimus sagittae noviōrī.

4. 1 L 2 B 3 J 4 K 5 A 6 C 7 G 8 E 9 F 10 H 11 I 12 D

Reading: *Hercules and His Friend Admetus, part 3*

“O wretched me! I, guest, sand in this home of sadness. What am I am able to do for my faithful friend?”

In a deep silence he thought for a long time. Then suddenly he stood up.

“I will force Death. I will return to Ademtus (his) queen.”

Dinner having been removed, he ran to the tomb. Death resisted strongly. Finally Hercules conquered it. Alcestis was freed. Sad Admetus returned home. Hercules greeted (his) friend entering. Alcestis stood with a man of a great body in the doorway.
“Do you know this woman, Admetus?”

“This is deceit,” Admetus exclaimed.

This is not deceit. She is your wife, who died. She lives again. I received her from death by a battle. Lo Alcestis, your dear wife.”

Thus Hercules offered himself as a faithful friend.

UNIT 38

1 1 dulcissimō, dulcissimae 2 immortālissimōrum, immortālissimārum 3 optimam 4 longissimō 5 sacerrīmīs 6 minimārum 7 lātissimī 8 sapientissimus, a, um 9 facillīmīs 10 senissimam

2 1 The most beautiful daughter of the king will be captured by enemy sailors. 2 At my parents’ I drink the sweetest wine. 3 The leader of the senate ought to be as noble as possible. 4 Many days of this year we have done nothing. 5 They will have sought greater praise and immortal peace from the soothsayer of the gods. 6 The best legion, which had saved the towns of the island, believed the emperor. 7 In the forest no one saw the very radiant and very swift horse. 8 The army having been most disgraceful, the soldiers ran from the city without victory. 9 Is the temple the greatest, which you (sg.) have ever seen? 10 Because of the worst attacks the citizens had no food. 11 The farmer threw seeds into the most firm land. 12 The most famous poet wrote verses as beautiful as possible. 13 The old slaves are not able to please the very new man. 14 The weeping boy will be placed onto the most sacred altar. 15 We do not trust this one, who lives in the highest mountain. 16 Do you (pl.) fear a very wretched death? 17 Honey is always the sweetest of all foods, which are in the country house. 18 We heard the very sad voice of the horseman. 19 You (pl.) came to the greatest city of the whole world. 20 The wildest animals of the forest are able to harm the men and women of that town.

3 1 Quid faciēs, postquam tempestās fortissima vēnerit? 2 Nēmō improbis-simum scelus facit. 3 Quaecumque arbor melior est, eam inveniēmus. 4 Agricolā pecū ovium agente, nūbēs lentissimae in caelo stetērunt. 5 Cūr rogātis auxilium plūrimum servōs celerrimī dē? or Cūr quae-ritis auxilium plūrimum dē servīs celerimī dēi? 6 Nēmō est dignior quam is. Est dignissimus cīvis Rōmae. 7 Nōlī indulgēre laetissimīs/felīcissimīs et iūcundissimīs līberīs! 8 Miserrima rēgīna persuāsit nōbīs īre. 9 Moenibus/mūrīs altissimīs dēlētīs, inimīcīi/hostēs iēcērunt in castra mīlītēs. 10 Fulgente in caelo sōle, antrum est quam obscurissimum.

4 1 K 2 D 3 E 4 F 5 I 6 H 7 G 8 J 9 B 10 C 11 A 12 L
On a certain day Hercules had to make a sacrifice. He put on white clothing. Nessus, whom Hercules had killed at one time, while dying gave his own blood to the wife of Hercules. Nessus had said that the blood was sacred. The blood grew the love, which men have for their own wives. The wife of Hercules, who wanted to save the love of her husband for herself, wet the clothing with the deadly blood of Nessus. Hercules, after the clothing had been wet, shortly felt a very sharp pain in (his) entire body. He was not able to take it off, so there was no hope for him. Hercules, as if driven by fury, collected himself (i.e. hastened) to Mount Oetas. Prepared to meet death, he constructed a funeral pyre with the greatest speed.

UNIT 39

1 1 amīcē, amīcius, amīcissimē 2 celeriter, celerius, celerrimē 3 pulchrē, pulchrius, pulcherrimē 4 iūcundē, iūcundius, iūcundissimē 5 breviter, brevius, brevissimē 6 leviter, levius, levissimē 7 asperē, asperius, asperrimē 8 lātē, lātius, lātissimē 9 difficiliter, difficilīus, difficillimē 10 dignē, dignius, dignissimē

2 1 S/he sings more beautifully than I. 2 They set sail as quickly as possible. 3 The queen cruelly killed the men, who were in prison. 4 (His/her) mouth having been wounded, s/he responds more slowly now. 5 We happily remained at home. 6 The soldiers were throwing arrows wildly. 7 The legion disgracefully destroyed the city for the sake of the senate. 8 The dog, taught well, saved the captured boy in the cave. 9 Here we have lived for a long time. 10 Do not do worse than them! 11 First you (pl.) ought to sail to the island with the ships. 12 Which animal works the most in the fields? 13 The hostile armies will come nearer to the camp. 14 No one thinks more wisely than that one. 15 The storm fights us more mildly than the gods. 16 My father forgives me in a friendly manner. 17 I will obey my parents as easily as possible. 18 The cruel king persuaded him more easily than the wise queen. 19 Secretly and gradually the blind author goes to the country house of that damn rich man. 20 The war having been begun the leader of the enemies stands humbly before the king.

3 1 iūcundē bibimus, quod līberī suum canem servāvērunt. 2 Equus rāmōs magnōs arboris firmē capiēt lātō Ēre. 3 Débüī trahere modo taurum, quī interfecτus erat. 4 Cūr omnia [or omnēs rēs] clam fēcit? 5 Ventī tempestātis oppidum parvum quam ēcerrimē pellent. 6 Nymphae sacrae pulchrīus agricolīs [quam agricolae] canunt. 7 Senēs lēgēs sapientius faciunt iuvenibus [quam iuvenēs]. 8 Arcus et sagittae recenter inveniēt inventa sunt in silvā. 9 In somniium quam celerrimē cadit. 10 Sōl in caelō fulgēbat quam candidissimē.

4 1 C 2 E 3 G 4 J 5 B 6 I 7 A 8 D 9 H 10 F 11 K 12 L
Reading: *The Death of Hercules, part 2*

Then seeing those, who were standing around, he asked, “Can you ignite the funeral pyre?”

But all refused, “Such a crime we will never commit.”

At last a certain shepherd put a fire under the funeral pyre. Immediately smoke filled everything and Hercules, covered by a dense cloud, was snatched away into Olympus by Jupiter. This was the end of the life of Hercules, of one of the most famous men of Greece. He was a man of many virtues and faults. He had wanted to atone for (his) faults. Twelve difficult labors were given to him. But the gods thought him worthy for great virtues. He was lifted up into heaven.

UNIT 40

1 1 comparison 2 place from which 3 verb (fruor) 4 source 5 degree of difference 6 means 7 personal agent 8 time within which 9 separation 10 absolute 11 time when 12 separation/place from which 13 personal agent 14 source/place from which 15 absolute; place from which

2 1 G 2 D 3 H 4 I 5 C 6 E 7 J 8 B 9 A 10 F 11 K 12 L

Reading: *Excerpt from Caesar’s Gallic Wars*

All Gaul is divided into three parts, of which one the Belgians inhabit, another the Aquitani, a third those who are called in their own language Celts, in our Gauls.

They all differ between each other in language, customs, and laws.

The river Garumn divides the Gauls from the Aquitani, the rivers Matrona and Sequana divide the Gauls from the Belgians.

Of them all the Belgians are the strongest, because they are far removed from the culture and civilization of the Province, and are nearest to the Germans, who live across the Rhine and with whom they are constantly fighting.

REVIEW OF UNITS 35–40

A 1 intransitive 2 does not take dative 3 intransitive 4 prefix 5 prefix 6 intransitive

B 1 dative plural, ablative plural 2 nominative singular, nominative plural, accusative plural 3 genitive singular 4 genitive plural 5 nominative plural, accusative plural 6 dative singular
C  1 pulchrius, pulcherrimum 2 pulchriörem, pulcherrimum 3 pulchriörès, pulcherrimás 4 pulchriörum, pulcherrimörum 5 pulchriöribus, pulcherrimís 6 pulchriöris (genitive sg.), pulchriöri (dative sg.), pulchriörès (nominative pl.), pulcherrima (all three possibilities)

D  1 laetē 2 laetius 3 laetissimē 4 ãcriter 5 ãcrius 6 ãcerimē

E  1 degree of difference 2 absolute 3 source 4 time
Latin–English

ā/ab [+ abl.] away from
abdūcō, -ere, abduxt, abductus to lead away
abiciō, -icere, -īcī, -iectus to throw away
abripiō, -ere, -ripī, -reptus to snatch away
abscondō, -ere, -scīdī, -scissus to cut off
absum, absesse, āfuī to be absent
ac and
accelēriō, -ēre, -cessus to light up
accipīō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptus to receive, accept
accūsō (1) to accuse
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen, fierce
acīēs, -ī (f.) line of troops
ācriēr fiercely
ad [+ acc.] to
addō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus to increase
adēō so
adēō, adēre, adivī/iī, aditus to approach
adferō see afferō
adīminō, -ere, -emī, -emptus to take away from
adiungō, -ere, -iünxī, -iunctus to attach
Admētus, -ī Admetus (king)
admōnītīōs, admōnītōnīs (f.)
admōnītīō, reprimand
adspergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus to sprinkle
adstō, -stāre, -stīfī to stand by
adsum, adesse, adfīuī to be present
adulātīōnis, adulātīōnīs (f.) flattery, adulation
adulēscēns, adulēscēntis (m./f.) young man, young woman
adūrō, -ere, -ūsum, -ūstus to scorch, singe
adveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus to arrive
adventus, -ūs arrival
adīficīō (1) to build
aeger, aegra, aegrum sick
aequor, aequorōris (nt.) sea; water
āēr, āeris (m.) air
aes, aeris (nt.) copper, brass
aestās, aestātīs (f.) summer
aestimō (1) to judge
aestūsus, -a, -um agitated
aetās, aetātīs (f.) age, time
aeternus, -a, -um eternal
aethēr, aetherīs (m.) sky, upper air
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus to bring to, present
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus to affect; afflict with
ager, agrī field
agger, aggerīs (m.) rampart
aggredior, -ī to attack
agō, -ere, āgī, āctus to drive, do
agricola, -ae (m.) farmer
āit s/he says
alacer, alacris, alacre quick, ready
albus, -a, -um white
Alcestis, Alcestīdīs (f.) Alcestis
Alcmenē, -ae Alcmena (mother of Hercules)
alimentum, -ī food, nourishment
aliqūē, aliqüa, aliqüod some, any
aliquis, aliqūid someone, something
alis, alia, alīud [gen.: -ūs, dat.: -ī]
other, another
alō, -ere, alūī, alūs to nourish; support
altē high
alter, -a, -um the other
altum, -ī deep sea
altus, -a, -um high, tall; deep
alveus, -ī riverbed
Amāzōn, Amāzonīs (f.) Amazon
ambiguus, -a, -um doubtful
ambō, ambae, ambō both
ambulō (1) to walk
amicītā, -ae friendship
amiculus, -ī close friend
amicus, -a, -um *friendly
ammis, amnis (m.) *stream
amō (1) *to love
amor, amorīs (m.) *love, yearning
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *to remove
amphora, -ae *jar
amplus, -a, -um *great, distinguished
an or
ancilla, -ae *female servant
ancora, -ae *anchor
angelus, -ī *angel
angustus, -a, -um *narrow
anima, -ae *breath, life, soul, spirit
animadvert *to notice
animal, animalis (nt.) *animal
animus, -ī *mind, spirit, courage
annus, -ī *year
antequam *before
anteponīs, -ere, antepositus *to prefer
antequam *before
antiquus, -a, -um *ancient
antrum, -ī *cave
aperīō, -ēre, aperūl, apertus *to open, uncover
Apollō, Apollinis (m.) *Apollo (god)
appāreō, -ēre, appārūl, apparitus *to appear
appellō (1) *to call, name
appellō, -ere, -puī, -pulsus *to drive to
appropinquō (1) *to approach
apud *at the house of, among
aqua, -ae *water
aquila, -ae *eagle
Aquitānī, -īrum *Aquitani (in SW Gaul)
āra, -ae *altar
arānēum, -ī *spider web
arbitror (1) *to think
arbor, arborīs (f.) *tree
Arcadia, -ae *Arcadia (part of Greece)
arcus, -ūs *bow
ārdeō, -ēre, ārī, ārsus *to burn, glow
argentum, -ī *silver
Argolicus, -a, -um *of Argos
arma, -ōrum *weapons
armamentum, -ī *cattle, herd
ars, artis (f.) *art, skill
ascendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsus *to rise
Asia, -ae *Asia
aspera, aspera, asperum *rough, harsh
assūmō, -ere, -sumpsti, -sumptus *to take up
asylum, -ī *sanctuary
at but
āter, ātra, ātrum *black, gloomy
Athēnai, -ārum *Athens
Atlās, Atlantīs (m.) *Atlas
atque *and
attineō, -ēre, attinūf, attentus *to concern, pertain
auctor, auctōris (m.) *author, authority
auctorītās, auctorītāsis (f.) *power, authority
auđēō, -ēre, ausus sum *to dare
auđīō, -ēre, audīvī, audītus *to hear
auferō, afferre, abstulī, ablātus *to carry away
Augēās, Augēae (m.) *Auges (king)
aura, -ae *breeze, air
aurēus, -a, -um *golden
aurīs, aurīs (f.) *ear
aurum, -ī *gold
aut or
autem *moreover
auxiliūm, -ī *aid, help
avis, avis (f.) *bird
āvōlō (1) *to fly away
balteus, -a *belt
barbarus, -a *foreigner, barbarian
bāsiō (1) *to kiss
beātus, -a, -um *happy, prosperous
Belgae, -ārum *Belgae (in North. Gaul)
bellum, -ī *war, battle
bene *well
benignē *kindly, friendly
bēstia, -ae *wild animal
bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitus *to drink
bīnī, -ae, -a *two each
bonus, -a, -um *good
bōs, bovis (m./f.) *[gen. pl. boum] bull, ox
bracchium, -ī *arm
brevis, breve *short
brevitās, brevitāsis (f.) *brevity, conciseness
cachinnus, -ī *laugh
Cācus, -ī *Cacus (giant)
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cēsus *to fall
caecitās, caecitāsis (f.) *blindness
caecus, -a, -um *blind
cædēs, caedis (f.) *murder, slaughter
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus *to kill
caelicus, -a, -um *heavenly, celestial
caelītēs, caelītum (m. pl.) *gods
caelum, -ī *sky
callīdus, -a, -um *sly, cunning
calor, calōris (m.) *heat
campus, -ī *plain, field
candēns, candentis *shining white
candidātus, -ī *candidate for office
candidus, -a, -um *shining white, radiant
canīs, canis (m./f.) *dog
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus *to sing
cantō, cantōnis (f.) *song
cantō (1) *to sing
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captu̲ss to take, seize
capitūvus, -a, -um captive, captured
caput, capitūs (nt.) head
carcē, carceris (m.) prison
careō, -ère, caru̲ū, carūtus [+ abl.] to lack
carmen, carminis (nt.) poem, song
carnis (f.) flesh
carrus, -ī cart, wagon
Carthāgō, Carthāginis (f.) Carthage
cārūs, -a, -um dear, beloved
castrum, -ōrum camp
cauda, -ae tail
causā [+ preceding gen.] for the sake of
causā, -ae cause, reason
caveō, -ère, cávī, cautus to beware
cavus, -a, -um hollow
ceed- see cadō
cecid- see cadō
cecid- see cadō
cecid- see cadō
cēō, -ere, cessī, cessus to move, step; yield
celer, celebris, celebre famous
celēberrimus, -a, -um most famous
celer, celeris, celerē swift
celeritās, celeritātis (f.) speed
celerēr quickly
cēlō (1) to conceal, hide
Celtae, -ārum (m.) Celts (in Central Gaul)
cēna, -ae dinner
Centaurus, -ī Centaur
cēp- see capiō
Cerberus, -ī Cerberus (dog)
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus to decide, discern
certāmen, certāminis (nt.) contest
certē certainly
certus, -a, -um resolved
cervīx, cervīcis (f.) neck
cervus, -ī stag
cessū (1) to stop
cēterī, -ae, -a the rest, others
Charōn, Charontis (m.) Charon (ferryman)
cibāria, -ōrum provisions
cibus, -ī food
circum (+ acc.) around
circumplector, -ī, -pexus sum to surround
circus, -ī racecourse, Circus Maximus
civīlis, civīle civil
civīs, civīs (m./f.) citizen
civitās, civitātis (f.) state
clamō, clamōris (m.) shout, cry
clārūs, -a, -um famous
claudō, -ere, clau̲sū, clausus to close
clavus, -ī nail
clēmēns, clēmentis merciful
cochlea, -ae snail
coēg- see cōgō
coeptō, -ere, coēptus to begin
cōgitō (1) to think
cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus to learn;
(proper) to know
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus to force, compel
cohors, cohortis (f.) cohort
collis, collis (m.) hill
colłum, -ī neck
color, colōris (m.) color
columba, -ae dove
cōmā, -ae hair
cōmēns, comitūs (m./f.) companion
commendō (1) to entrust
commisceō, -ere, commiscui, commīxtus to mix together
committō, -ere, commissī, commissus to join,
engage; commit
commodus, -a, -um proper
commoveō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōitus to influence
commūnīs, commūne common
comparō (1) to prepare, purchase
compellō (1) to address
compellō, -ere, compelli, compulsus
to drive together, compel
compendium, -ī shortcut
comperīō, -ire, -perfī, -pertus to learn
complūrēs, complūra several, many
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus to squeeze
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus to grant, allow
concordia, -ae harmony
concors, concordis harmonious
concupibus, -a, -um lying in sleep
nox concubia, noctis concubiae early
night, bedtime
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus to found
conferō, -ere, contulī, collātus to collect
conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus to accomplish
confingō, -ere, confinxī, confinctus
to fight, engage
coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī, conīunctus
to join together
coniūrātīō, -onis (f.) conspiracy
conōr, -ārī, -ātus sum to try
coniunxō, -ere, -scendī, -scensus to climb
consectīō, -ere, -sēnsī, -sensus to agree
consumdō, -ere, consēdī, consumissantus to sit down
consilium, -ī plan, decision
consōlor (1) to console
conspectus, -ūs view
cōspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus to observe
cōspicus, -a, -um noticeable, visible
cōstituō, -ere, -stitū, -stitūtus to establish, decide

cōnstō (1), -stitī to consist of

cōnsuēscō, -ere, cōnsuēvit, cōnsuētu to get accustomed; (perfect) to be accustomed
cōnsuētuō, cōnsuētūdinis (f.) habit
cōnsul, cōnsulis (m.) consul
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris (m.) ex-consul

cōnsulō, -ere, -sulū, -sultus to reflect; look out for


cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmpstus to spend
contendō, -ere, -tēns to hurry, hasten;
to entreat
conterminus, -a, -um neighbouring, bordering
continēns, continēntis bordering, adjacent
continēnter continuously
continuō immediately

cōntrā [+ acc.] against

cōnvelō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus to shatter
conveniō, -ere, -venī, -ventus to meet
convertō, -ere, convertī, conversus to change

convivium, -ī banquet

cōria, -īri, -ortus sum to arise
cōpia, -ae supply

cōpiōsūs, -a, -um rich, abundant
cōquō, -ere, coxī, coctus to cook
cɔr, cordis (nt.) heart, feelings

cornū, -ūs horn
cɔrōna, -ae crown
corpus, corporis (nt.) body
corrēpīō, -ere, -ripū, -reptus to seize
crās tomorrow

crassitūdō, crassitūdinis (f.) thickness

crēdō, -ere, crēdiō, crēditus [+ dat.] to believe, trust
cremō (1) to burn
crēō (1) to create
crepitus, -ūs noise
crepundia, -ōrum rattles

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crēvūs to grow
Crēta, -ae Crete (island)
crēvā see cernō, crescō
crūdēlis, crūdelēs cruel
crūdēlatōs, crūdēlatītis (f.) cruelty
cubicolum, -ī bedroom
cucurr- see currō
culpā, -ae blame, fault
culpō (1) to blame
cultus, -ūs culture

cum [+ abl.] with; [conj.] when, since, because

cūnctus, -a, -um all, whole, entire
cupidus, -a, -um desirous
cupīō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus to desire
cūr why
cūra, -ae care, concern
cūrō (1) to care
curō, -ere, curcor, cursus to run
cūstōdiō, -ire to guard, watch over
cūstōs, cūstōdis (m./f.) guardian
damma, -ae (m.) deer
damnātiō, damnātiōnis (f.) condemnation
damnō (1) to condemn
dē [+ abl.] down from, about, concerning
da, -ae goddess
dēbeō, -ere, dēbū, dēbitus to owe, ought
dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus to decree
decimus, -a, -um tenth
dēcīpiō, -ere, -cēps, -ceptus to deceive
decorō (1) to adorn
ded- see dō
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus to lead away
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus to defend
dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris (m.) defender
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus to convey
dēfessus, -a, -um tired
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus to be lacking
dēfōrmis, dēfōrme disfigured
dēićō, -ere, -īēci, -iectus to throw down
dēin then
dēinde then, next
dēlēō, -ere, dēlēvī, dēlētus to destroy
Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic
dēmōn at last
dēnique finally
dēns, dentis (m.) tooth
dēnsus, -a, -um dense, thick
dēpellō, -ere, dēpuī, dēpullus to remove, dispel
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus to deposit
dēscendō, -ere, dēscendi, dēscensus to descend
dēsōderium, -ī longing
dēspōndeō, -ere, dēspōndī, dēspōnsus to pledge
dētineō, -ere, dētīnūs, dētentus to detain,
    keep back
dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus to take away/off
dēus, -ī god
dēvastō (1) to lay waste
dēvolvō, -ere, dēvolvī, dēvolūtus to roll down
dēvorō (1) to devour
dextera, dextra, dextrum right
dēxō, -ere, dīxī, dicitus to say
dictō, -onis (f.) speaking
dictum, -ī word
dīēs, -ēī (m.) day
Dictionaries
differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus to differ
dificilīs, dificile difficult
difficultātās, difficultātās (f.) difficulty
digitus, -ī finger
dignus, -a, -um worthy
diligenter diligently
dīmitūs, -ere, -mītī, -missus to let go
Diomēdēs, Diomēdes (m.) Diomedes (king)
dīrus, -a, -um fearful, terrible
discēdō, -ere, discēdī, discēsus to depart
discō, -ere, didicī to learn
discurreō, -ere, discurreī to run by
discuitūs, -ere, -cussūs, -cussus to dash to pieces
disciūs, -ere, disciēsū, disiectus to scatter
disputūs (1) to discuss
dissimilīs, dissimile dissimilar
dissolvō, -ere, -sol-vī, -sollūtus to pay up
dīstō (1) to be apart
dūō for a long time
dūtissimē for a very long time
dīves, dīvīs rich
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsū, dīvīsus to divide, separate
dīx- see dīcō
dō, dare, dēdī, datus to give
doceō, -ere, docuī, doctus to teach
doleō, -ere, dolūī to grieve, pain
dolor, dolōris (m.) pain, sorrow
domesticus, -a, domus domestic, of the house
domina, -ae mistress
dominus, -ī master
domus, -ūs (f.) home
dōnum, -ī gift
dormiō, -īre, dormiēvī, dormītus to sleep
dōs, dōtūs (f.) dowry
dubitō (1) to doubt; hesitate
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus to lead; consider
dūdum just now
dulcis, dulce sweet
dum while
duo, duae, duo two
duodecim twelve
dūrōs, -a, -um hard, rough
dux, ducis (m.) chief, leader
dux- see dūcō
ē/ex (= abl.) out of, from
ecce lo, look
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus to carry out
efficiō, -ere, -feciūs, -fectus to accomplish, make
ehīs- see agō
ego I
egregius, -a, -um extraordinary, distinguished
eloquentia, -ae eloquence
emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus to buy
enim indeed
eō to there, there
eō, ēre, īvī, ītus to go
epistula, -ae letter, epistle
eques, equītus (m.) horseman, knight; (pl.) cavalry
equidem indeed, certainly
equus, -ī horse
ergō therefore
ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectus to raise up
ēripīō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus to snatch away
ērūditus, -a, -um accomplished
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus to burst
ēsuriō, -īre, ēsūrīvī, ēsūritis to be hungry
et and
etiam also, even, again, still
Eurystheus, -ī Eurystheus (king)
evānēscō, -ere, -vānuī to vanish
ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventus to turn out, come to pass
ēvertō, -ere, ēvērtī, ēversus to overturn
ēvōcō (1) to call forth, summon
ex/ē (= abl.) out of, from
exāminō (1) to examine
excīlō, -ere to excel
excidō, -ere, -cidī to fail
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus to welcome
exclītō (1) to excite, arouse
exclāmō (1) to shout out
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus to shut out
exemplum, -ī example, sample
exēō, exīre, exīvī/exīiū, exītus to go out
exercitus, -ūs army
exhērēdō (1) to disinherit
exigō, -ere, exēgī, exactūs to pass
exiliō, -ī exile, banishment
expiō (1) to atone for
expōlitūs, -a, -um polished
expōnō, -ere, -posūs, -positus to put out
exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus to construct
extrēmus, -a, -um farthest, last
fācicūs (1) to make, forge
fābula, -ae story
faciēs, -ēī form, shape; face
faciūs, -oris (nt.) crime
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factūs to do, make
factūm, -ī deed
facultās, facultātās (f.) opportunity
falsus, -a, -um false
fāma, -ae report, fame, story
famēs, famīs (f.) hunger
familia, -ae family
fātum, -ī fate, destiny
faucēs, faucium (f. pl.) throat
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fāvuit [+ dat.] to favour
fēc-  see faciō
fēlix, fēlicis happy
fēmina, -ae woman
ferculum, -ī litter
ferē almost
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus to carry, bear
ferōx, ferōcis wild
ferreus, -a, -um of iron
ferrum, -ī iron
ferus, -a, -um wild
fessus, -a, -um tired
fidēlis, fidēle faithful
fidēs, -ēi faith, trust
fidō, -ere, fīsus sum [+ dat.] to trust
fīlia, -ae daughter
fīlius, -ī son
fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fīctus to imagine
fīniō, -ēre, -īvi, -ītus to limit, bound, determine
fīnis, fīnis (m.) end, boundary
fīnitimī, -ōrum neighbours
fīō, fīēre, factus sum to be made, to be done
fīrmē firmly
fīrmūr firmly
fīrmus, -a, -um firm, strong
flagrō (1) to blaze, burn
flamma, -ae flame
fleō, -ēre, flevī, fletus to weep, cry
fletus, -ūs weeping
flōs, flōris (m.) flower
flūdus, -a, -um flowing
flūmen, flūminis (nt.) river
flūō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus to flow
fōns, fontis (m.) spring, source
foris, foris (f.) door
fōrmā, -ae form, shape
fōrmīdō, fōrmīdinēs (f.) terror
fōrmūlōsūs, -a, -um terrifying
fōrmō (1) to form, shape
fors, fortis (f.) chance
fortis, forte strong, brave
fortiter strongly
fortūna, -ae luck, fortune, fate
fosca, -ae ditch, trench
frāgor, frāgoris (m.) crash, uproar
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus to break
frāter, frātris (m.) brother
frāus, fraudis (f.) deceit
frēg-  see frangō
frequēns, frequentis crowded
fretum, -ī strait
frōns, frondis (f.) leaf
frōns, frontis (f.) forehead, appearance
frūctus, -ūs fruit
fruor, -ī, frūctus sum [+ abl.] to enjoy
frūstrā in vain
fu-  see sum
fuga, -ae flight, refuge
fugō, -ere, fugī, fugitus to flee
fulgō (1) to put to flight
fulgeō, -ere, fulsum to shine
fumīfer, fumīfera, fumīferum smoky
fūmus, -ī smoke
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus to pour out, lay low
furor, furōris (m.) fury, rage
fūrtium, -ī theft; trick
fūstis, fūstis (m.) club
Galli, -ōrum Gauls
Gallia, -ae Gaul
Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic
Garumna, -ae Garonne river
gaudēō, -ere, gāvīsus sum to rejoice
gaudium, -ī joy
gemō, -ere, gemū, gemitus to groan
gēns, gentis (f.) race, tribe
genū, -ūs knee
genus, generis (nt.) race, birth, kind
Germani, -ōrum Germans
gerō, -ere, gēssī, gestus to wage, conduct, manage
Gēryōn, Gēryonis (m.) Geryon (king)
gess-  see gerō
gladiōs, -ī sword
glomerō (1) to form into a ball
glōria, -ae glory
gradus, -ūs step
Gracia, -ae Greece
grātia, -ae thanks
grātus, -a, -um pleasing
gravis, grave harsh, serious
gremitum, -ī bosom, lap
grex, gregis (m.) herd
habeō, -ere, habuī, habitus to have
habitō (1) to live
haud not at all
herbāriōs, -ī skilled in plants, herbalist
Herculēs, Herculis (m.) Hercules
hērēs, hērēdis (m./f.) heir
Hesperidēs, Hesperidum (f.) Hesperides
hesternus, -a, -um of yesterday
hic here
hic, haec, hoc this, these
hiems, hiemis (f.) winter
hinc from here
Hippolyta, -ae Hippolyta
Hispānia, -ae Spain
hodiē today
homō, hominis (m.) man, human being
honestās, honestātis (f.) integrity
honestum, -ī virtue, goodness
honōris, honōris (m.) honour
hūra, -ae hour
horribilis, horribile terrifying
hortus, -ī garden
hospes, hospitis (m.) guest, host
hospitālis, hospitāle hospitable
hospitāliēr with hospitality
hostis, hostis (m./f.) enemy
hūc to here
hūmānītās, -ātis (f.) refinement; civilization
hūmilis, hūmile low, humble
humus, -ūs, humilis, humile
iaciē, -ere, iō (1) to throw
ićō (1) to fling
iām now, already
ibi there
ictus, -ūs blow
īdem, eadem, idem same
idōneus, -a, -um suitable
īēc- see iacīo
igitur therefore
īgnāvus, -a, -um lazy
ignis, ignis (m.) fire
ignōrō (1) to not be acquainted
ignōscō, -ere, īgnōvī, īgnōitus [+ dat.] to forgive
ignōitus, -a, -um unknown
īlle, illa, illud that, those
illus over there
illīnc from there
imāgo, ōmaginis (f.) likeness
imbuō, -ere, buī, -būtus to wet
immērgō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus to immerse
immīneō, -ere to threaten
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus to let in
immō no, rather
immortālis, immortāle immortal
immortalītās, immortalitātis (f.) immortality
immūtō (1) to change
impeditum, -ī obstacle; (pl.) baggage
impeditūs, -a, -um impassable
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus to strike
imperātor, imperātōris (m.) emperor
imperium, -ī command
imperō (1) [+ dat.] to command
impetrō (1) to obtain
impetus, -ūs attack
impleō, -ere, implēvī, implētus to fill
impōnō, -ere, -posū, -positus to put upon
impōtēns, impotentēs powerless; violent
impōbitās, impōbitātis (f.) wickedness
impōbus, -a, -um wicked
impōvēsō unexpectedly
impōvēsus, -a, -um unexpectedly
impūbēs, impūberis youthful
in [+ acc.] into, onto; [+ abl.] in, on
inānis, inane empty, vacant
incēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssus to advance
incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cūs to occur, happen
incipiō, -ere, inceptūs to begin
incītō (1) to urge on, rouse
incūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus to enclose
incula, -ae (m.) inhabitant
incollō, -ere, -colūtūs, -cultus to inhabit
incolumis, incolume uninjured, safe
incrēdībilis, incrēdībile incredible
inde from there
indignus, -a, -um unworthy
indulgeō, -ere, indulūsī, indulūtus [+ dat.] to indulge, grant
induō, -ere, -duū, -dūtus to put on
indrēlix, ināflicēs unhappy
infērior, infērius lower
infērus, -a, -um lower, below
infingō, -ere, infīrgētūs, infrāctus to break, weaken
infīns, ingentis
infraeō, -ere to increase
infūnānus, -a, -um savage
iniciō, -ere, iniēcī, iēctūs to throw in
inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, enemy
iniquitās, iniquitātis (f.) difficulty, unevenness
inīuria, -ae injustice, injury
inīcīo, -ere, -lexī, -lectus to mislead
innocēns, innocēntis innocent
inquam I say [defective verb]
inquit s/he said [defective verb]
inścīus, -a, -um ignorant
inścriō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptūs to record
inśdīae, -ārum ambusch, treachery
inśdior (1) to wait in ambush
inśignis, inśignis distinguished
institō, -ere, institūtūs, institūtūs to resolve, undertake
institūtium, -ī custom, habit
instrūo, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctūs to equip
inśula, -ae island
inśuō, -ere, inśūsū, inśūtūs to sew in
integer, integrum complete, sound
intellegō, -ere, intellexī, intellexēntis to understand
inter [+ acc.] between
interficiō, -ere, interfēcī, interfēctūs to kill
magnitudō, magnitudinis (f.) size, greatness
magnopere greatly
magnus, -a, -um great, big
māior, māius greater
māiorēs, māiorum (m. pl.) ancestors
mālō, mālle, mālū to prefer
malus, -a, -um bad, evil
manēō, -āre, mānsī, mānsus to remain
manus, -ūs (f.) hand
mare, maris (nt.) sea
marīnus, -a, -um related to the sea
marītus, -ā husband
marmoreus, -a, -um marble-like
Mars, Martis (m.) Mars (god)
mās, maris male
mārtīus, -ā husband
māter, mātris (m.) mother
mātrimōnium, -ā marriage
Matrona, -ae Marne river
maximē especially
maximus, -a, -um greatest
medius, -a, -um middle (of)
mel, mellis (nt.) honey
meminī, meminisce to remember
memoria, -ae memory
mendāx, mendācis lying
mēns, mentis (f.) mind
mēnsa, -ae table
mēnsis, mēnsis (m.) month
mentīō, mentiōnis (f.) mention
Mercurius, -ās Mercury (god)
mēta, -ae goal, limit
metūō, -ēre, metūō, metūtus to fear
metus, -ūs fear
meus, -a, -um my
micō (1) to flicker, sparkle
mīles, mīlitis (m.) soldier
mīlle [indeclinable in singular; pl.: mīlia, -um]
(nt.) thousand
minimē at least, minimally
minor (1) to threaten
minus less
mīs- see mittō
miscēō, -ēre, miscēō, mixtus to mix
miser, misera, miserum wretched
miserē wretchedly
mūlis, mūlī mild
mittō, -ēre, mīssī, mīssus to send
modo only, just
modus, -ī way
moenia, moenum (nt. pl.) walls, ramparts
mōlēs, mōlis (f.) effort
mōlo, -ēre, mōluī, mōtus to grind
moneō, -ēre, monūf, monītus to warn
mōns, montis (m.) mountain
mōnstrō (1) to show
mōnstrum, -ī monster
mora, -ae delay
morbus, -ī disease, illness
morior, -āris, mortuus sum to die
morō (1) to delay
mors, mortis (f.) death
mortālis, mortāle mortal
mortīfer, -a, -um deadly
mortuus, -a, -um dead
mōs, mōris (m.) custom
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus to move
mox soon
mūgiō, -āre to bellow
mulier, mulieris (f.) woman
multitudō, multitudinis (f.) great number, multitude
multus, -a, -um much, many
mundus, -ī world
mūniceps, mūnicipis (m./f.) citizen
mūniō, -āre, mūniōs to fortify
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis (f.) fortification
mūnus, mūnīris (nt.) gift
murmur, murmuris (nt.) murmur, roaring
mūrus, -ī wall
mūtō (1) to change, exchange
nam indeed, for
nārrō (1) to narrate, tell
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum to be born
nāsus, -ī nose
nātūra, -ae nature
nētus, -a, -um born
nauta, -ae (m.) sailor
nāvīgō (1) to sail
nāvis, nāvis (f.) ship
nebula, -ae cloud
nec and not
nec . . . nec neither . . . nor
necessārius, -ārius male relative
necessē est it is necessary
necessītās, necessitās (f.) necessity, compulsion
necō (1) to kill
nefārius, -a, -um criminal
negō (1) to deny, say no
negōtium, -ī business, task
Nēmea, -ae Nēmea (city)
nēmō, nēminis (m./f.) no one, nobody
neque and not, nor
nequēō, nequēre, nequīvī, nequītus to be unable
néquīquam in vain
nesciō, -āre, nescīvī, nescītus to not know
Nessus, -ī Nessus (a Centaur)
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither
niger, nigra, nigrum black
nihil nothing
nil nothing
nisi lest, unless
nobilis, nobile noble
nobilitās, nobilitātis (f.) nobility
noceō, -ere, nocuī, nocūtus [+ dat.] to harm
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī to not want
nōmen, nōminis (nt.) name
nōn not
nōndum yet
nōs we
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtūs to learn; (perf.) know
nostrē, nostrā, nostrum our
nōtēscō, -ere, nōtūī to become known
nōv- see nōscō
novem nine
novus, -a, -um new
nox concubia, noctis concubiae early night, bedtime
nox, noctis (f.) night
noxa, -ae harm
nūbēs, nūbis (f.) cloud
nūdō (1) to bare, expose
nūdus, -a, -um bare, naked
nūllus, -a, -um [gen.: -ūs, dat.: -ī] none, no
num really [introduces question whose answer is anticipated to be no]
numerus, -ī number
numquam never
nunc now
nūntiō (1) to announce
nympha, -ae nympher
obiciō, -ere, -iēchī, -iectus (+ dat.) to throw before
oblivīscor, -ī, obliūtus sum to forget
omnītēscō, -ere, -ōmniūscūī to cease
obscurōs, -a, -um dark
obsidiō, -ōnis (f.) siege
occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsūs to strike down; kill
occūpō (1) to seize, occupy
occūrro, -ere, occurrō, occurrūs to occur
Oceanēs, -ī Ocean
octōgintā 80
oculus, -i eye
ōdī, -isse to hate [perfect forms are translated as present]
ōdium, -ī hatred
odor, odōris (m.) smell
Oeta, -ae Oeta (mountain)
offendō, -ere, -fēndī, -fēnsūs to offend
offensūs, -a, -um offended, displeased
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus to offer, expose
officium, -ī duty
ōlim once, formerly
Olympus, -ī Mt. Olympus
omnia entirely
omnis, omne all, every
onerō (1) to load, oppress
operātiō, operātiōnis (f.) working, operation
opertus, -a, -um covered
opīniō, opīniōnis (f.) opinion
oppidum, -ī town
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus to overwhelm
opus, operis (nt.) to work
ōrāculum, -ī oracle
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (f.) speech
orbis, orbis (m.) circle, world
orbis terrārum world
Orcus, -ī Lower World
ōrīgō, ōrīginīs (f.) origin, source
ōrnō (1) to adorn
ōrō (1) to beg, ask
ōs, ōris (nt.) mouth
ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentūs to show
ōtium, -ī leisure
ōvis, ovīs (f.) sheep
ōvum, -ī egg
pānis, pānis (m.) bread
pār, paris equal
parāsītus, -ī parasite
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūs [+ dat.] to spare
parēns, parentis (m./f.) parent [not an i-stem]
pāreō, -ère, pāruī, pāritūs [+ dat.] to obey
pāriēs, pārietis (m.) wall
parō (1) to prepare
pars, partis (m.) part, some; side
particeps, participis (m.) partner
partīor, -ī, partītus sum to divide, distribute
parum too little
parvus, -a, -um small, little
pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstūs to feed, eat
passus, -ūs step, pace
pāstor, pāstōris (m.) shepherd
pāstōriōs, -a, -um of a shepherd
pateō, -ère, patū, to be open, extend
pater, patris (m.) father
patria, -ae country, fatherland
paucus, -a, -um few, scarce
paulātim gradually
paulisper for a short time
paulō a little
paulum a little
pauper, pauperis poor
pāv- see pāscō
pāx, pācis (f.) peace
pecātum, -ī fault
peccō (1) to make a mistake, sin
pectus, pectoris (nt.) chest
pecū, ēs flock, (pl.) pastures
pecūnia, -ae money
pecus, pecoris (nt.) cattle
pelagus, -īs (f.) sea
pellis, pellis (f.) skin, hide
pellō, -ere, pupuli, pulsus to drive (away), strike
penetrō (1) to enter into
per [+ acc.] through
peragro (1) to traverse
percutiō, -ere, -cussūs to strike
perdītus, -a, -um destitute
perducō, -ere, dūxī, -ductus to bring, induce
peregrīnus, -ī stranger, foreigner
pereō, perīre, perīvī, peritus to die, perish
perfidio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus to complete
perculūsūs, -a, -um dangerous
percūlum, -ī danger
permittō, -ere, -misī, -missus to give up
pernoctō (1) to spend the night
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, unbroken
perterritus, -a, -um feared thoroughly
perveniō, -ere, -vēnī, ventus to come to
pēs, pedis (m.) foot
petō, -ere, petīvī, petitus to seek, ask
philosophia, -ae philosophy
Pholus, -ī Pholus (a Centaur)
pinguis, pingue fat
piscis, piscis (m.) fish
placeō, -ere, placūs, placitus [+ dat.] to please
plausus, ēs applause
plēbs, plebis (f.) common people
plumbum, -ī lead
plūrium very much
plūrimus, -a, -um most
plūs, plūris more
Plūtō, Plātōnis (m.) Pluto (god)
pōculum, -ī cup, drink
poena, -ae punishment, penalty
poēta, -ae poet
pollex, pollicis (m.) thumb
pompa, -ae procession
pōmus, -ī (f.) apple
pōne behind
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positūs to put, place
pōns, pontis (m.) bridge
pontus, -ī (deep) sea
populāris, populāre popular
populus, -ī people
porrō in turn
porta, -ae gate
portō (1) to carry
portus, -ūs port, harbor
possideō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessus to possess
post [+ acc.] after
postē afterwards
posterus, -a, -um next
postquam after
postrēmō finally
postulō (1) to demand
posu- see pōnō
potēns, potēnsis powerful
potentia, -ae power
potestās, potestātis (f.) power
potius rather
praebeō, -ere, -buī, -bitus to offer, show
praeципio, -ere, -cēpī, -cēptus to command, order
praecipuus, -a, -um special, particular
praedicāre excellently
praecū swo, -ere, -cūsī, -cūsus to close
praēda, -ae booty, loot
praefēre, praeferrē, praetulūs to carry before
praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectus to put in command of
praemittō, -ere, -misī, -missus to send forth
praemia, -ī reward
prasēns, praeentis present
praecidium, -ī support, assistance
praestō, -āre, præstitī, praestitus to be superior, excel
praecum, praecesse, praefūrī, to be at the head
praetert + acc.) beyond, except
praeterē besides, moreover
praetor, -ōris (m.) praetor
praetrepidus, -a, -um very nervous
prātum, -ī meadow
prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus to seize
pretium, -ī price
prīnum at first, to begin with
prīmus, -a, -um first
prīnceps, principis (m.) chief, leader
principium, -ī beginning
prius before
prīvō (1) [+ abl.] to deprive
prō [+ abl.] for, in front of
procō, procūcis bold, insolent
procedō, -ere, -cessī to advance
procul at a distance
prōdeō, prōdire, prōdīvī/prōdīi, prōditus
to advance
proelium, -ī battle
profectō, -onis (f.) departure
profectō really
prōferō, prōferre, prōtuī, prōlātus to bring
forth, mention
profection, -ī, prefectus sum to set out
profundus, -a, -um deep
prōh dolor I am sorry; unfortunately
prohibō, -ère, prohibū, prohibitus to prevent
prōlēs, prōlis (f.) offspring
prōmerītum, -ī merit
prōmittō, -ere, -mišī, -missus to promise
prōnuntiō (1) to announce
prope [+ acc.] near; (as adverb) nearly
proferō (1) to hasten
propinquus, -ī kinsman
propinquus, -a, -um neighbouring
propior, propius shorter, closer
propīus, -a, -um one’s own
propter [+ acc.] on account of
propere therefore
propere quod because
prosequor, prosequī, prosequītus sum to pursue
prosperō, -ās, -um prosperous, fortunate
prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus to watch
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūi [+ dat.] to benefit
prōvō, prōvitus, -a, -um advanced
prōvīncia, -ae province
proximus, -a, -um nearest
prūdēns, prūdentis prudent
pūblicus, -a, -um public
rēs pública republic
pulla, -ae girl
puer, puerī boy
pugna, -ae battle
pugnō (1) to fight
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful
pulsō (1) to knock
puppis, puppis (f.) ship
pulpul- see pellō
pūrgō (1) to clean
pūrus, -a, -um pure
putō (1) to think
pyra, -ae pyre
Pythia, -ae Pythia
quā where
quadriga, -ae chariot
quarē, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus to ask,
inquire, seek
quaestūra, -ae quaestorship
quaestus, -ūs advantage, profit
quālis, quāle what kind
quam how; than
quamquam although
quamvis although
quandō when; since
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great
quartus, -a, -um fourth
quasi as if
quattuor four
-que and (attaches to the second of a pair)
querō, -ī, questus sum to complain
questus, -ūs lament
qui who
quī, quae, quod which
quia because
quīcumque, quaecumque, quidcumque
whoever, whatever
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whichever
quid what
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam certain [pronoun]
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam certain [adjective]
quidem indeed
quīscī-, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus to keep silent
quiētus, -a, -um peaceful, still
quīn that
quīntus fifth
quīque, quaeque, quoque each [adjective]
Quīris, Quīritis (m.) Roman citizen
quis who?
quīsquām, quīsquām anyone, anything
quisque, quidque each one, each thing
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever
quō to where
quod because; as
quōmodo how?
quōnam where?
quoniam since
Dictionaries

quoque also
quoteō how often
rabiēs, rabiēī rage, fury
rāmus, -ī branch
rapiō, -ere, rapiū, raptus to snatch
ratiō, ratiōnis (f.) account, reasoning
ratis, ratis (f.) raft, ship, vessel
recēns, recentis recent
recessus, -ūs retreat
recipiō, -ere, receptus to receive
reclādō, -ere, reclāsī, reclūsī to open up
rectē correctly
reclūsī (1) to refuse
reddō, -ere, reddīdī, redditus to give back,
redī (1) to repair
reducō, redīre, redīvi/rediō, reduitus to return
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus to lead back
referō, -ferre, reṭtuī, relātus to bring back
rēgina, -ae queen
regiō, -ōnis (f.) region, country
rēgius, -a, -um royal
rēgnum, -ī kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus to rule
relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus to leave, abandon
relinquō, -a, -um remaining
remancē, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus to remain
removere, -ere, -ōvī, -ōtus to remove
repetē correctly
repenīnus, -a, -um hasty
reperiō, -ire, repērī, repertus to find
repleō, -ere, plēvī, plētus to refill
rēs, reī (f.) thing, matter; state
rēs publica republiī
resistō, -ere, restīfī, + dat. to resist
resolvō, -ere, resolvī, resolūtus to relax
resorbēō, -ere to suck back
respondeō, -ere, respondī, respōnsūs to respond
retineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus to restrain
rēx see regō
rēx, rēgis (m.) king
Rhēnus, -ī Rhine River
Rhōdus, -ī (f.) Rhodes
rīdeō, -ere, rīsī, rīsus to laugh
ridiculus, -a, -um funny
rīgeō, -ere, riguī to be rigid
rīpa, -ae riverbank
rīs- see rideō
rīte properly
rōbus, -a, -um strong
rogo (1) to ask, request
rogus, -ī funeral pyre
Rōma, -ae Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman
rostrum, -ī beak
rubēr, rubra, rubrum red
rūmor, rūmōris (m.) rumour
ruō, -ere, ruī to go to ruin
rūrsus again
rūsī, rūris (nt.) country, countryside
sacer, sacra, sacrum holy, sacred
sacrificium, -ī sacrifice
saepe often
saevus, -a, -um wrathful, cruel
sagittā, -ae arrow
sāl, salīs (m.) salt; humour, wit
saliō, -ēre, salūi, salutus to jump
salūs humorously
salūs, salūitis (f.) safety; health; greeting
salūtō (1) to greet
salvus, -a, -um intact, safe, well
sanguis, sanguinis (m.) blood
sānus, -a, -um sane
sapiēns, sapiēntis wise
sapiēnter wisely
sapientia, -ae wisdom
satis enough, sufficient [indeclinable adj.]
saxum, -ī rock
scapulae, -ārum shoulder blades
scelerātūs, -a, -um wicked
scelus, sceleris (nt.) crime, wickedness
scientia, -ae knowledge
sciō, -ēre, sciēvi, sciētus to know
scriptūs, -a, -um to write
scriptor, scriptōris (m.) writer
scriptūm, -ī writing, written work
scītum, -ī shield
sēcrētūs, -a, -um private, secret
secundus, -a, -um second; next; prosperous
sed but
sedēō, -ere, sēduī, sessus to sit
sēdēs, sēdis (f.) seat
sēditūō, sēdītīōnis (f.) insurrection
sēmen, sēminis (nt.) seed
sempervīsus always
senātor, senātōris (m.) senator
senātus, -ūs senate
senectūta, -ae old age
senex, senis old
sēns- see sentīō
sēnsus, -ūs sense
sententia, -ae opinion
sentīō, -ēre, sēnsī, sēnsus to feel
sepelīō, -ēre, sepelīvī, sepultus to bury
septem seven
sepulcrum, -ī tomb
Sēquānī, -ōrum Sequani (between Saone River and Jura Mts.)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum to follow
serpēns, serpēntis (m./f.) snake
serpō, -ere, serpēst, serptus to crawl
sertā, -ōrum garlands
serva, -ae servant, female slave
servīō, -ī, servīvī, servītus [+ dat.] to serve
servītūs, servītūtis (f.) slavery
servō (1) to save
servus, -ī male servant, slave
seu or, whether
sevēritās, sevēritātis (f.) strictness
śī if
śībila, -ōrum whistling
śīc in this way
śīcut likewise
śīdus, sīderis (mt.) star, constellation
śīlentium, -ī silence
śīla, -ae forest
śīlīsimis, simile similar
śīmal at once
śīmal atque as soon as
śīne [+ abl.] without
śīngulāriūs, -a, -um single
śīnguli, -ae, -a one each
śīnis, -ūs love
śīsit, sitīs (f.) thirst
śīve ... śīve either ... or
śūcis, societās (f.) fellowship, alliance
socius, -ī comrade
śōl, sōlis (m.) sun
sōleō, -ēre, solītus sum to be in the habit
sōlicitūs (1) to trouble, disturb
sōlūm only
solum, -ī ground, land
śōlus, -ā, -um alone, sole
śolvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus to loosen, free
śomnīō (1) to dream
śomnium, -ī dream
śomnus, -ī sleep
śōnus, -ī noise, sound
śōpor, sōpōris (m.) slumber
śōrīdus, -a, -um dirty
śōror, sōrōris (f.) sister
śōrs, sortīs (f.) lot, luck
śpatium, -ī space; period (of time)
śpeīciēs, -ēī appearance
śpectātor, spectātōris (m.) spectator
śpectō (1) to observe
śpērō (1) to hope
śpēs, -ēī hope
śpirō (1) to breathe, blow
splendor, splendōris (m.) lustre
spoliō (1) to rob, plunder
squalōr, squalōris (m.) filth, dirtiness
stābulum, -ī stable, stall
stātim immediately
stātua, -ae statue
status, -ūs position, standing
stēlla, -ae star
stet- see stō
stō, stāre, stetī, status to stand
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus to heap up
studeō, -ēre, studūī to be eager (for), to be zealous
studiūm, -ī zeal, enthusiasm; spirit
stultē foolishly
stūpor, stupōris (m.) bewilderment
Stymphalīus, -ī Stymphalus (city)
Styk, Stygīs (f.) Styx (river)
śuāvis, suave sweet, pleasant, kind
śuāvitās, suāvitātis (f.) sweetness
subdō, -ere, -didū, -ditūs (+ dat.) to put under
subigō, -ere, subēgī, subēctus to impel, compel
subītō suddenly
subīlica, -ae pile
subscriptīō, subscriptīōnis (f.) note of a censor
subsidium, -ī relief
succurrīō, -ere, succurrū, succursus [+ dat.] to run to help
sum, esse, fū, futūrus to be
summa, -ae chief part
summus, -a, -um highest, greatest
śūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpstus to assume
sūmptus, -ūs cost, expense
superior, superius higher; preceding
superō (1) to outlive
superstītīō, superstītīōnis (f.) superstition
superus, -a, -um upper, above
supplēmentum, -ī reinforcements
supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis (f.) thanksgiving
supplicium, -ī punishment
surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctus to stand up, rise
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus to undertake
suspiō, suspiciōnis (f.) suspicion, mistrust
suus, -a, -um his own, her own, its own, their own, one’s own
symbola, -ae contribution (for a common meal)
tābēscō, -ere, tābēscūī to decay
taceō, -ere, tacū, tacitus to be silent
tālis, tāle such
tam so
tamen nevertheless, all the same
tamquam just as, as if
tandem finally; (in questions) just
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus *to touch*
tantum *only*
tantus, -a, -um *so great*
taurus, -ī *bull*
tēctum, -ī *roof, house*
tēgō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus *to cover*
tēlum, -ī *javelin, weapon*
tempestās, tempestātīs (f.) *weather, storm*
templum, -ī *temple*
temps, temporis (nt.) *time*
tendō, -ere, tētendī, tentus *to stretch out; aim*
tenebrae, -ārum *darkness*
teneō, -ere, tenū, tentus *to hold*
tergum, -ī *hide*
ternī, -ōrum *three each*
terra, -ae *land*
terreō, -ere, terrī, territus *to frighten, terrify*
terribilis, terribile *terrifying*
terror, terrī *terror, terror*
tertius, -a, -um *third*
tetig- *see tangō*
tēx- *see tēgō*
theātrum, -ī *theatre*
Thēbae, -ārum *Thebes*
Thessalia, -ae *Thessaly*
Thrācia, -ae *Thrace*
Tiberis, Tiberis (m.) *Tiber River*
timeō, -ere, timū *to be afraid, fear*
timidē *timidly*
timidus, -a, -um *shy*
timor, timōris (m.) *fear*
Tiryns, Tirynthiš (acc. -ntha) *Tiryns (city)*
tītulus, -ī *inscription*
tolerō (1) *to endure*
tollō, -ere, sustulū, sublātus *to lift*
torōs, -ī *couch, bed*
tot, so many *
tōtus, -a, -um [gen. sg.: -īus, dat. sg.: -ī] *whole, entire, all*
trabs, trabis (f.) *beam*
trādō, -ere, trādīdī, trāditus *to hand down*
trāduō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus *to lead across*
trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus *to drag, take*
tranquillus, -a, -um calmus *calm*
trans - [acc.] *through*
transīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus *to pierce through*
transseō, -īre, -tīvī, -itus *to cross over*
transītus, -īs *passage*
trāx- *see trahō*
trecentī, -ae, -a *300*
treṣ, tria *three*
trīgintā *30*
tristis, triste *sad*
tristitia, -ae *sadness*
tū *you (sg.)*
tul- *see ferō*
tum *then*
tumeō, -ère, tumū *to swell*
tumultus, -īs *confusion*
tumulus, -ī *mound*
tunica, -ae *undergarment, tunic*
turba, -ae *mob; riot*
turbō (1) *to disturb*
turpīcūlus, -a, -um *somewhat ugly*
turpis, turpe *disgraceful*
tūtus, -a, -um *safe*
tuus, -a, -um *your (sg.)*
tyranus, -ī *tyrant*
ubi *when, where*
ubiique *everywhere*
ūllus, -a, -um [gen. sg.: -īus, dat. sg.: -ī] *any*
ulterior, ulteriōris *farther*
ultimus, -a, -um *last, edge of*
ultrō *of one’s own accord, voluntarily*
umbra, -ae *shadow, shade*
umerus, -ī *shoulder*
umor, īmōris (m.) *moisture*
unquam *ever*
unda, -ae *water, water*
unde *from where*
undique *from all sides, everywhere*
ūnus, -a, -um [gen.: -īus, dat.: -ī] *one, alone, single, sole*
ubris, urbis (f.) *city*
ūrō, -ere, ūsī, ūstus *to burn*
ursa, -ae *bear*
ūsus, -īs *use*
ut(i) *that, as*
uter, utra, utrum *which?*
uteurque, utraque, utrumque *each of two*
utervīs, utravīs, utrāmūs *either one, whichever of the two you please*
ubris, urbis (f.) *city*
ūrō, -ere, ūsī, ūstus *to burn*
ursa, -ae *bear*
ūsus, -īs *use*
ut(i) *that, as*
uter, utra, utrum *which?*
uteurque, utraque, utrumque *each of two*
utervīs, utravīs, utrāmūs *either one, whichever of the two you please*
ubris, urbis (f.) *city*
ūrō, -ere, ūsī, ūstus *to burn*
ursa, -ae *bear*
ūsus, -īs *use*
ut(i) *that, as*
uter, utra, utrum *which?*
uteurque, utraque, utrumque *each of two*
utervīs, utravīs, utrāmūs *either one, whichever of the two you please*
vel or, rather
vēlum,-ī sail; vēla (pl.) dare to set sail
velum just as
vendī,-ere, vendidī, vendītus to sell
venēnum,-ī poison
venīō,-īre, vēnī, ventus to come
ventus,-ī wind
venustus,-a,-um charming
verbum,-ī word
vērē truly
vērmus,-a,-um vernal, of spring
vērō in truth, in fact
versus,-ī verse, line of poetry
vertō,-ere, vertī versus to turn
vērum in truth, to be sure
vērus,-a,-um true
vērvēx, vērvēcis (m.) wether; stupid person
vescor,-ī verbs to eat
vestex, vestricās (m.) vestis (f.)
vestes, vestis (f.) clothing
vestītus,-a,-um forbidden
vetus, veteris old
vexō (1) to trouble
via,-ae road, way
vibrō (1) to sparkle
vīcīnus,-a,-um neighbouring
vicīs (f.) (no nom.) change, turn; in vicem in turn
victimā,-ae victim
victor, victōris victorious
victōria,-ae victory
videō,-ēre, vīdī, vīsus to see; [passive] seem
vigil, vigilis awake
vigintī twenty
villa,-ae country house
vincō,-ere, victī, victus to conquer
vinculum,-ī chain
vindicō (1) to liberate, protect
vīnum,-ī wine
violō (1) to violate
vir,-ī man
virgō, virginis (f.) maiden, virgin
virtūs, virtūtis (f.) courage, virtue
vis, (pl.) vīrēs, vīrium (f.) force, power, strength; (pl.) strength
viscera, viscerum (nt. pl.) entrails, flesh
vīta,-ae life
vītium,-ī fault
vītō (1) to avoid, shun
vivō,-ere, vivī, vīctus to live
vīvus,-a,-um alive
vīx see vivō
vocō (1) to call
volō, velle, volū (1) to want, wish
volōtus ~ vultūris,-ī vultūre
volūtus,-ūs (m.) face
voluntās, voluntātis (f.) will
voluptās, voluptātis (f.) pleasure
vōs you (pl.)
vōx, vōcis (f.) voice
Vulcānus,-ī Vulcan (god)
vulgus,-ī crowd
vulnerō (1) to wound
vulnus, vulneris (nt.) wound
vultus,-ūs face, expression

English–Latin

abandon relinquo,-ere, reliquiā, relictus
about dē [+ abl.]
cross trāns [+ acc.]
across post [+ acc.]; postquam [+ verbal clause]
age aētās, aētātis (f.)
against contrā [+ acc.]
aid auxilium,-ī
air āēr, āeris (m.)
all omnis, omne
ally socius,-ī
alone sōlus,-a,-um
altar āra,-ae
always semper
ambush īnsidiae, -ārum

ancient antīquus,-a,-um
anger īra,-ae
animal animal, animālis (nt.)
announce nūntiō (1)

anyone, anything quisquam, quidquid
arm braccium,-ī
army exercitus,-ūs
around circūm [+ acc.]

arrive adveniō,-īre,-vēnī,-ventus
arrow sagitta,-ae
ask rogō (1); quaerō,-ere, -vēnī,-ventus
quaeśītus [dē from]
attack [noun] impetus,-ūs; [verb] oppugnō (1)
author auctor, auctōris (m.)

297

Dictionaries
### Dictionaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>memory</td>
<td>memoria, -ae</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>animus, -ī</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mob</td>
<td>turba, -ae</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>pecūnia, -ae</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moon</td>
<td>lūna, -ae</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>mātēr, mātris (m.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>mōns, montis (m.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>ōs, ēris (nt.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>meus, -a, -um</td>
<td>pronoun, adjective, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>nōmen, nōminis (nt.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>apud [+ acc.]</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nearest</td>
<td>proximus, -a, -um</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbours</td>
<td>finitūmī, -ōrum</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>neuter, neutra, neutrum</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>novus, -a, -um</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>nūlīs, -a, -um</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no one</td>
<td>nēmō, nēminis (m./f.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble</td>
<td>nōbilis, nōbile</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>adverb, adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know</td>
<td>nesciō, -ēre, nescīvī, nescītus</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not want</td>
<td>nōlō, nōlē, nōlūī</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>nihil, nil</td>
<td>adjective, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nymph</td>
<td>nympha, -ae</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obey</td>
<td>pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritus [+ dat.]</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offspring</td>
<td>prolēs, prolīs (f.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>senex, senis</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>in [+ abl.]</td>
<td>preposition, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on account of</td>
<td>propter [+ acc.]; ob [+ acc.]</td>
<td>preposition, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>ūnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>modum</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>aperiō, -ēre, aperuī, apertus</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td>dēbebō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbītus</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>nostrum, nostrae, nostrum</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of</td>
<td>ē/ex [+ abl.]</td>
<td>preposition, adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>praeterēō, praeterēre, praetereō, praeterēre, praeterēritus</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastures</td>
<td>pecūs, pecuum</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent</td>
<td>parēns, parentis (m./f.)</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [not an i-stem]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peace</td>
<td>pāx, pācis (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>quiētus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>populus, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus [+ dat.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>locūs, -ī (pl. is neuter: loca, -ōrum); [verb] pōnō, -ere, posū, positūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plain</td>
<td>campus, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poet</td>
<td>poēta, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor</td>
<td>pauper, pauperis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise</td>
<td>laudō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>mālō, mālle, mālūi; antepōnō, -ere, anteposū, antepositus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>parō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press</td>
<td>premō, -ere, pressā, pressus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>pretium, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison</td>
<td>carcer, carceris (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperous</td>
<td>prosperus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>province</td>
<td>provincia, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punishment</td>
<td>poena, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in command</td>
<td>praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queen</td>
<td>régīna, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>celer, celeris, celere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radiant</td>
<td>candīdus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ramps</td>
<td>moenia, moenium (nt. pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>legō, -e, légī, lēctus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>accipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recent</td>
<td>recēns, recentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remain</td>
<td>maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>meminī, meminisse [+ gen.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respond</td>
<td>respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respondūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reward</td>
<td>praemium, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>flūmen, flūminis (nt.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riverbank</td>
<td>rīpa, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>road</td>
<td>via, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rome</td>
<td>Rōma, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>regō, -ere, rēxī, -rēctus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumor</td>
<td>rūmōr, rūmōris (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacred</td>
<td>sacer, sacra, sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>tristis, triste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail</td>
<td>nāvīgō (1); set sail vēla (pl) dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailor</td>
<td>nauta, -ae (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>ēdem, eadem, idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>servō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sea</td>
<td>aequor, aequorīs (nt.); deep sea pontus, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secret</td>
<td>clam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>videō, -ēre, vídī, vísus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek</td>
<td>petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek from</td>
<td>petere ā [+ abl.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seize</td>
<td>capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seize</td>
<td>capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self</td>
<td>īpsa, īpsa, īpsud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>vendō, -ere, vendīdī, venditus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senate</td>
<td>senātus, -ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>mittō, -ere, mīūs, missus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense</td>
<td>sentīō, -ēre, sēnsī, sēnsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serious</td>
<td>gravis, grave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servant</td>
<td>serva, -ae; (male) servus, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serve</td>
<td>servīō, -ēre, servīvī, servītus [+ dat.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set sail</td>
<td>vēlum, -ī; [verb] vēla (pl) dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shade</td>
<td>umbra, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shadow</td>
<td>umbra, -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>ovis, ovis (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>fulgō, -ēre, fulsī,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shining white</td>
<td>candidus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
eBooks from Taylor & Francis
Helping you to choose the right eBooks for your Library

Add to your library’s digital collection today with Taylor & Francis eBooks. We have over 50,000 eBooks in the Humanities, Social Sciences, Behavioural Sciences, Built Environment and Law, from leading imprints, including Routledge, Focal Press and Psychology Press.

Choose from a range of subject packages or create your own!

Benefits for you
- Free MARC records
- COUNTER-compliant usage statistics
- Flexible purchase and pricing options
- 70% approx of our eBooks are now DRM-free.

Benefits for your user
- Off-site, anytime access via Athens or referring URL
- Print or copy pages or chapters
- Full content search
- Bookmark, highlight and annotate text
- Access to thousands of pages of quality research at the click of a button.

Free Trials Available
We offer free trials to qualifying academic, corporate and government customers.

eCollections
Choose from 20 different subject eCollections, including:

Asian Studies
Economics
Health Studies
Law
Middle East Studies

eFocus
We have 16 cutting-edge interdisciplinary collections, including:

Development Studies
The Environment
Islam
Korea
Urban Studies

For more information, pricing enquiries or to order a free trial, please contact your local sales team:

UK/Rest of World: online.sales@tandf.co.uk
USA/Canada/Latin America: e-reference@taylorandfrancis.com
East/Southeast Asia: martin.jack@tandf.com.sg
India: journalssales@tandfindia.com

www.tandfebooks.com